

# 2014 DEFENSE WHITE PAPER



**Ministry of National Defense**  
Republic of Korea



**2014** **DEFENSE**  

---

**WHITE PAPER**

# Message from the Minister of National Defense

Despite the difficult circumstances faced by our military in 2014, the Republic of Korea's armed forces joined the ranks of advanced nations' elite fighting forces and created an "open barracks culture" to gain the trust of the public.

The Armed Forces of the Republic of Korea (ROK) have valiantly protected the nation from multiple crises, including the Korean War, when sufficient quantities of adequate weaponry were unavailable, and provided the peninsula with stable security during the rapid push for modernization. At this hour, ROK troops are standing guard, preserving the peace and ensuring freedom for all citizens. Furthermore, our overseas peacekeeping and reconstruction missions are providing hope to millions of displaced families in dire need of the basic standards of life and elevating the stature of the ROK in the eyes of the world.

The threat to security on the Korean Peninsula has never been greater. North Korea is committed to maintaining and training massive numbers of conventional forces while simultaneously advancing its asymmetric forces and weapons of mass destruction that shake the stability of the Korean Peninsula, Northeast Asia and the world.

Historical and territorial conflicts and a growing arms race have intensified among the countries of Northeast Asia. Transnational and non-military threats, including terrorism, both at home and abroad, cyber-attacks, infectious diseases and massive natural disasters are ever increasing.

The ROK-U.S. Combined Defense System stands as a deterrent to provocations from North Korea and other transnational and non-military threats. Should North Korea attempt any aggressive military action, the retaliation by our forces will be overwhelmingly swift and decisive. Our forces perform their duties in a disciplined environment that is both safe and conducive to mission readiness. Moral education and pragmatic education courses and training contribute to the creation of a confident, proud, and fully prepared soldier.

The bilateral military alliance of the Republic of Korea and the United States has gained strength and resolve to deal with regional and global security issues through an expanding level of cooperation and a continued commitment to joint military exercises that strengthen readiness, thus developing into a comprehensive strategic alliance. Also, in order to deter nuclear and missile provocations from North Korea and to boost the rapid response capabilities necessary to deal with instability factors in Northeast Asia, we have reinforced bilateral and multilateral defense exchanges and cooperation with neighboring countries through hotlines that link defense and military authorities and active senior-level strategic dialogues.

The ROK Armed Forces established the ROK's Defense Reform Basic Plan (2014-2030), which reflects today's internal and external security landscape and ever-changing defense environment. The plan's precepts on defense reform policy ensure that our military structure is fully prepared for all contingencies of future wars and our defense management system is operationally efficient. Our Agency for Defense Development (ADD), a world-class defense research and development institution, is pursuing the development of defense science and technology, while vitalizing civilian-military cooperation through the transfer of defense technologies to the private sector.



We think the starting point of strong armed forces is true military discipline that safeguards the human rights of all personnel. Our “open barracks culture” represents a significant step in freeing our soldiers and their families from concerns about the fair and equitable treatment of all personnel. The efforts are not just to prevent incidents within the barracks but to fundamentally transform the spirit, culture and system of service members and to strengthen the foundation of our military by ensuring an “advanced elite military” stands ready to achieve victory against any enemy. Government-wide measures that guarantee human rights and build sound character among all service members, strengthen the leadership of junior officers and NCOs, open the closed doors of barracks, and create safe working conditions are being instituted in compliance with the recommendations of the Civil-Government-Military Barracks Culture Reform Committee.

We are strengthening the fundamentals by reinforcing our military readiness posture and formulating a defense environment that best suits the needs of our service members, the bedrock of our combat strength. To stand ready for future uncertainties, we are strengthening independent defense capabilities and creating a favorable strategic environment for our national interests while preparing for the unification of Korea.

The 2014 Defense White Paper highlights the major achievements and defense policy modifications made during the first two years of the Park Geun-hye administration, which chose “Construction of a Robust Security Posture” as one of the tenets of its national security strategy. This publication contains details on barracks culture reform, which is of great concern to all, our capability to respond to North Korea’s nuclear and missile threats, and the efforts to garner people’s confidence in force improvement projects. Details of regulatory reforms, National Defense 3.0, the normalization of abnormal practices, trust-building process on the Korean Peninsula, and initiatives pursued at the government-wide level are also included. This year’s version differs from previous publications in that it contains QR codes so that readers can watch videos related to the field of defense on their smartphones and gain a greater understanding of the content.

We will continue to firmly defend the Republic of Korea from all threats and perform our duties in ways that are consistent with an “advanced elite military” and that enhance the ROK’s stature in the world. I would like to take this opportunity to ask for your continued support in the rebuilding of our military based on the concept of “Defense with a Robust Foundation, Defense Preparing for the Future.”

Thank you.

December 31, 2014

A handwritten signature in black ink, consisting of stylized Korean characters: '관민구' (Han Min-koo).

Han Min-koo

Minister of National Defense, Republic of Korea

# Contents

---

<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Changes in Security Environment and Challenges Ahead</b>	
	Section 1 Global Security Environment	8
	Section 2 Security Environment of Northeast Asia	14
	Section 3 North Korean Situation and Military Threats	22
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>National Security Strategy and Defense Policy</b>	
	Section 1 National Security Strategy	36
	Section 2 National Defense Policy	39
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Establishing a Robust Defense Posture</b>	
	Section 1 Maintaining a Full-spectrum Military Readiness Posture	46
	Section 2 Reinforcing Response Capabilities against North Korean Nuclear and WMD Threats	59
	Section 3 Establishing an Integrated Civilian-Government-Military-Police Defense Posture	65
	Section 4 Assuring Combat Readiness through Realistic Training	68
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Strengthening Future-Oriented Self-Defense Capability</b>	
	Section 1 Refinement and Development of Defense Reform	82
	Section 2 Force Buildup based on Jointness	91
	Section 3 Shaping Elite Reserve Forces and Enhancing War Sustainment Capability	95
	Section 4 Development of Defense Informatization	107
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Developing the ROK-U.S. Alliance and Reinforcing Defense Diplomacy and Cooperation</b>	
	Section 1 Development of a Future-Oriented ROK-U.S. Alliance	114
	Section 2 Wartime OPCON Transition that Contributes to the Reinforcement of the ROK-U.S. Combined Defense Posture	123
	Section 3 Expansion of Defense Diplomacy and Cooperation	130
	Section 4 Contributing to World Peace through Overseas Deployments	143
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Military Measures and Readiness in Accordance with the Changing Inter-Korean Relationship</b>	
	Section 1 Military Support to Advance the Trust-building Process on the Korean Peninsula	158
	Section 2 Ensuring Inter-Korean Exchanges and Cooperation, and Providing Humanitarian Assistance	164
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Innovative Defense Management and Promotion of the Defense Industry</b>	
	Section 1 Enhancement of the Efficiency of Defense Budget Management	172
	Section 2 Strengthening Competitiveness of Force Improvement Projects	180
	Section 3 Creative Defense R&D and Promotion of the Defense Industry	184

---

## Chapter 8 Creating a Proud and Rewarding Environment for Military Service

Section 1 Establishment of an Open Barracks Culture Trusted by People	192
Section 2 Improvement of Welfare for Service Members	198
Section 3 Development of the Defense Medical System	206
Section 4 Expansion of Support for Retiring Service Members	209

## Chapter 9 Defense Policies Focusing on Respect for the People

Section 1 Improvement of Defense Regulations and the Public's Rights and Benefits	216
Section 2 Enhancement of Benefits for War Veterans and Service Members Killed in Action	223
Section 3 Development of the Public Disaster and Safety Support System	227
Section 4 Improvement of the Military Service System and Military Administration	232
Section 5 Strengthening Communications with the Public	237

---

# Appendix

---

### Special Appendix

1. Adjustment of the Korea Air Defense Identification Zone	242	11. Joint Communiqué of the 45 <sup>th</sup> ROK-U.S. Security Consultative Meeting	286
2. Seoul Defense Dialogue	247	12. Joint Communiqué of the 46 <sup>th</sup> ROK-U.S. Security Consultative Meeting	290
3. Repatriation of Chinese Soldiers' Remains	254	13. Major International Arms Control Agreements and Organizations	294

### Appendix

1. Status of Neighboring Countries' Military Strength	258	14. Status of Overseas Deployment of ROK Forces	296
2. Comparison of Major Countries' Defense Budgets	260	15. Budget for ROK Military Units Deployed Overseas	297
3. Comparison of the Military Strength of the Two Koreas	261	16. Annual Defense Budgets	298
4. Comparison of the Economic Indicators of the Two Koreas	262	17. Status of Defense Industrial Cooperation Agreements with Other Countries	299
5. Status of the North Korean Nuclear Issue	262	18. Status of Salary Increases for Enlisted Service Members	300
6. Status of North Korea's Missile Development and Specifications	263	19. Changes in Mandatory Military Service Period	301
7. Chronicle of Inter-Korean Military Relations	264	20. Status of Alternatives to Military Service by Type	302
8. Chronicle of North Korea's Infiltrations and Local Provocations against the ROK	276	21. National Defense Organizations	304
9. Status of Combined and Joint Exercises and Training	282	22. Modification of Laws and Regulations under the Jurisdiction of the Ministry of National Defense	306
10. Joint Declaration in Commemoration of the 60 <sup>th</sup> Anniversary of the Alliance between the Republic of Korea and the United States of America	284	23. Composition and Major Activities of the National Defense Committee of the National Assembly	318

# Chapter 1

## Changes in Security Environment and Challenges Ahead



Section 1 Global Security Environment	8
Section 2 Security Environment of Northeast Asia	14
Section 3 North Korean Situation and Military Threats	22



Opening ceremony of the third Nuclear Security Summit held in The Hague, Netherlands (March 2014)

# Section 1 Global Security Environment

---

While the present international order dominated by the United States remains intact, many factors of challenges, such as the emergence of regional powers, are on the rise, calling for changes in such order. As local conflicts are still occurring and transnational threats continue to proliferate, security uncertainty in the international community is growing ever more. The magnitude of new security threats, including economic instability and the changing patterns of future wars, is also increasing.

---

## 1. U.S.-led International Order and Emergence of Regional Powers

It is not likely that the post-Cold War international order to date will go through sudden changes. However, factors of challenges that call for changes in the international order are on the rise. The United States will continue to maintain its dominant position in spite of defense budget cuts, based on its overwhelming military superiority, advanced scientific technology and soft power. China is also likely to continue to strengthen its international status with its rapidly growing economy. It will also play a crucial role in the process of realigning the global security order while forming a “new type of great power relations”<sup>1</sup> with the United States. Due to the EU’s pursuit of external expansion, Russia’s attempt to recover its past influence, and the rise of India and Brazil as regional powers, cooperation and competition among major nations will deepen and the international order will become more complex. Also, middle powers, including the ROK, will play a bigger role in the international order.

## 2. Ever-present Possibility of Local Conflicts

Local conflicts are expected to continue around the world due to deeply rooted factors of

---

<sup>1</sup> This is a suggestion made by China calling for respect for the core interests of the two countries based on mutual trust. It has as its main ideas the prevention of clashes and confrontations, mutual respect, cooperation and co-prosperity.

conflict surrounding territory, religion, race, etc.

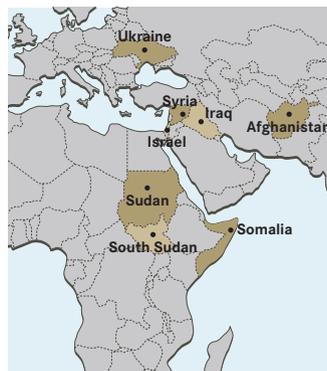
In Europe, tensions are mounting between Russia and the West (the United States and EU) in a geopolitical conflict over Ukraine. The Ukrainian government decided not to conclude the trade agreement with the EU in November 2013, which brought large-scale demonstrations against the government and resulted in the resignation of the Yanukovich government in February 2014. In March 2014, separatists pressed ahead with a referendum on the secession of the Crimean Peninsula, which was consequently annexed by Russia. The annexation of Crimea by Russia triggered

sanctions, notably by the United States and the EU, against Russia. Subsequent to the Crimean Peninsula annexation, eastern parts of Ukraine joined the movement of secession, leading to battles between Ukrainian government forces and pro-Russian rebels. The two sides reached a cease-fire agreement in September 2014 in Minsk; however, the agreement still harbors the seeds of instability as sporadic battles continue on.

Various conflicts and disputes continue in the Middle East. Three years after the U.S. military declared the end of war and retreated from Iraq in 2011, the nation is suffering a civil war that is growing more intense between government forces and the Islamic State of Iraq and the Levant (ISIL), militant Islamic extremists. The Iraqi government formally asked the United States to conduct air raids against the ISIL. The international community, with the United States at the center, began to launch air raids on the ISIL in Iraq in August 2014. The United States and some Middle East states expanded their range of raids on the ISIL to Syria in September 2014. Efforts by the international community to avert bloodshed in the Syrian civil war continue. The Syrian government agreed to abandon chemical weapons, which led to the Geneva II Conference on Syria in January 2014 between the Syrian government and the rebels (the National Coalition for Syrian Revolutionary and Opposition Forces). However, the conference yielded no tangible results and reached an impasse. Amidst the stalled Israeli–Palestinian peace talks, the “kidnapping and murder of three Israeli teenagers” in June and July of 2014 triggered armed conflicts in the Gaza Strip. Both sides agreed to a cease-fire in August 2014 with active mediation efforts by the international community, including the United States and Egypt. However, it appears that their disputes may be rekindled.

In East Asia, territorial disputes over the South China Sea and the East China Sea have surfaced as factors of security instability. The parties to the disputes dispatched naval vessels and fighters into the disputed areas and conducted military exercises, causing tensions to

Chart 1-1. Major Regions of Conflict



escalate. The Philippines requested arbitration on the South China Sea from the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea in January 2014. In May, ASEAN<sup>2</sup> Foreign Ministers expressed concern over the territorial disputes in the South China Sea and urged disputing parties to refrain from aggressive actions.

In Afghanistan, the anti-terror war carried out by the NATO<sup>3</sup>-led International Security Assistance Force (ISAF)<sup>4</sup> is in its final stage. NATO leaders gathered for the 2010 Lisbon summit agreed to transfer the responsibility of maintaining public order to the Afghan government no later than the end of 2014. The transfer has been in process since June 2013. Since July 2010, the ROK government dispatched a Provincial Reconstruction Team (PRT) and the Ashena Unit, whose mission was to protect the PRT, to Afghanistan to support post-war reconstruction. The mission was successful, and all of the dispatched forces returned in June 2014.

In Africa, disputes in various forms have instigated political and social instability. The Jasmine Revolution that began in Tunisia in North Africa in December 2010 resulted in regime changes in Egypt and Libya. Still, chaotic situations continue. In South Sudan, which became independent in July 2011, conflicts among tribes have evolved into a civil war, causing the international community to strengthen its efforts to put it to an end. The Intergovernmental Authority on Development (IGAD)<sup>5</sup> began mediation in peace talks in January 2014, and in May, the UN deployed an additional 5,000 troops to join the existing 7,000 to support public order. Ethnic conflicts in the Darfur region of Sudan are still ongoing, and Abyei has become a disputed area with Sudan and South Sudan claiming their governance over the area. In Somalia, instability persists as concerns over political chaos remain following a lull in the civil war.

### **3. Growing Security Uncertainty due to Proliferation of Transnational Threats**

Security threats have become more multifaceted and security uncertainty in the international community has increased due to the proliferation of transnational threats.

Some nations, such as North Korea and Iran, have consistently developed nuclear weapons and long-range ballistic missiles, posing threats to world peace and security. North Korea

---

2 Association of South-East Asian Nations

3 North Atlantic Treaty Organization

4 Multinational forces formed with a UN Security Council resolution toward the support of maintenance of public order and post-war reconstruction in Afghanistan.

5 This is a regional cooperative body to pursue economic stability and development in East Africa and is composed of eight nations, including Ethiopia, Kenya and Uganda.

launched long-range missiles in December 2012, followed by its third nuclear test in February 2013. The UN Security Council adopted Resolution 2087<sup>6</sup> and Resolution 2094<sup>7</sup>, which prescribed high-intensity sanctions in response to North Korea's missile launches and its third nuclear test. Efforts by the international community to deter Iran's nuclear development are still in progress. The five permanent members of the UN Security Council plus Germany (P5+1) and Iran agreed to the cessation of highly enriched uranium manufacturing in exchange for the partial lifting of economic sanctions in November 2013, and have carried out follow-up negotiations since February 2014. The third Nuclear Security Summit in The Hague, Netherlands in March 2014 allowed the leaders to discuss not only measures to prevent the threat of nuclear terrorism, but also the prevention of illegal trade of nuclear materials, protection of nuclear materials and related facilities, and nuclear safety.

For the past several years, the number of terrorist acts increased sharply in the Middle East, North Africa, and Southwest Asia due to instabilities in those regions. The Country Reports on Terrorism 2013 by the U.S. Department of State, released in April 2014, shows that the number of terrorist attacks in 2013 reached about 9,700, a 43% increase over the previous year. In particular, the need to strengthen the efforts of individual nations as well as international cooperation in preparing against terrorism becomes greater considering that terrorism combined with weapons of mass destruction (WMD) could pose a serious threat to international security.

Joint measures among the international community are in higher demand as the perpetrators of cyber-attacks have become organized and started targeting nations beyond their previous targets such as individuals and enterprises, all of which has resulted in heightened threats from cyber-attacks. The third Global Conference on Cyberspace was convened in Seoul in October 2013 with participants from 87 nations and 18 international institutions. The conference provided an opportunity for the participants to discuss ways to collaborate among nations on cyber security, contributing to the enhancement of the international cooperation system against cyber threats.

Securing sea lines of communication (SLOC) from pirates is also one of the important pending security issues. The international community created the Contact Group on Piracy

---

6 The UN Security Council adopted this resolution in January 2013 immediately after the launch of a long-range missile by North Korea. It expanded and strengthened the sanctions against North Korea, expressing the Council's determination to take significant action in the event of a further provocation by North Korea.

7 The UN Security Council adopted this resolution in March 2013 immediately after North Korea's third nuclear test. Its key points are the banning of all new overseas activities by North Korean banks, cracking down on smuggling of bulk cash, and the full interdiction of transfer of goods that would contribute to weapons of mass destruction programs.

off the Coast of Somalia (CGPCS)<sup>8</sup> in order to strengthen counter-piracy cooperation among nations. Presently, approximately 20 nations have dispatched naval vessels to Somali waters and the Gulf of Aden. The ROK government also dispatched the Cheonghae Unit to Somali waters in March 2009, contributing to securing safety in maritime transportation. According to the International Maritime Bureau (IMB) under the International Chamber of Commerce (ICC), the number of piracy activities decreased to 264 in 2013 compared to 297 in 2012.

Large-scale natural disasters such as earthquakes and tsunamis, together with infectious diseases like the Ebola virus disease, have emerged as new security issues which warrant joint effort from the international community. Typhoon Haiyan caused extensive damages to the Philippines in November 2013. The international community sent rescue teams and aid supplies to support recovery. The ROK government dispatched the Araw Contingent to the Philippines to carry out reconstruction missions, including building restoration and medical aid. West African nations such as Liberia, Sierra Leone and Guinea have suffered massive damages from the Ebola virus. The World Health Organization (WHO) reported that more than 19,000 people were infected as of December 2014, costing more than 7,500 lives. The UN Security Council unanimously adopted a resolution to prevent the spread of the Ebola virus in September 2014. The international community exerts various efforts by providing not just medical personnel, medicine, and medical equipment, but also treatment facilities and economic aid. The ROK government also sent medical personnel as part of humanitarian assistance, thereby actively participating in the efforts of the international community.

#### **4. Various Threats against Security**

As interdependency among nations continues to grow as a result of globalization and informatization, the possibility of cooperation among nations as well as the chances of friction and conflicts also grow. The economy is at the forefront of such aspects. Imbalances in economic development among different regions and nations have been aggravated. The financial and fiscal crisis of one nation spills over to other nations and the international community as a whole, magnifying the instability of the global economy. The instability of the global economy combines with other problems such as poverty, exhaustion of resources, terrorism, climate change, pollution and massive disasters, which affects the security of individual nations.

---

<sup>8</sup> Established to eliminate pirates in January 2009 by the U.S. Security Council Resolution 1851 and participated in by 60 nations, including Somalia and other neighboring countries (Kenya, Yemen, Seychelles, Tanzania), major nations with interests (the ROK, U.S., China, Japan, UK, Russia, France), etc. Thirty international organizations and international maritime associations such as the UN, EU, International Maritime Organization and NATO are also participants.

In the future, while traditional war still persists, various new forms of war will emerge as technology develops and the possibility of small-scale war and local conflict increases. Powerful states will conduct war in the form of information and technology warfare using high-tech weapons to make long-range precision strikes and stealth attacks to keep casualties to a minimum. Weak states and non-state actors will engage in war by utilizing combinations of terrorism, asymmetric warfare, ideological war, and psychological war to overcome relative gaps in military power. The future domains of war will include outer space and cyberspace, with a mixture of kinetic warfare using military forces and non-kinetic warfare such as cyber warfare.

# Section 2 Security Environment of Northeast Asia

---

In Northeast Asia the so-called “Asia’s Paradox” has been in place in which economic interdependency grows without a commensurate level of advancement in security cooperation. Individual nations intend to increase their influence and continue an arms race. With the United States presently maintaining military superiority, China, Japan and Russia have strengthened their military power, focusing on naval and air forces. The “Rebalance to the Asia-Pacific Region” strategy of the United States and the rise of China will make their bilateral relations of cooperation and competition a key variable in the security order of Northeast Asia.

---

## 1. Deepening Asia’s Paradox

In Northeast Asia, the so-called “Asia’s Paradox” has continued, in which deepening economic cooperation and interdependency is not met with a commensurate level of advancement in security cooperation. Northeast Asia has emerged as the center of the global economy. The second- and the third-largest economies in the world are located in this region, and the size of the economies of the ROK, China and Japan combined represent approximately 23% of the global output. Economic cooperation expands as regional interdependency deepens and discussion of local economic integration continues. On the other hand, due to issues of conflicts such as historical perception, territorial rights, and North Korean nuclear weapons and missiles, security uncertainties have intensified, but without a sufficient level of security cooperation.

## 2. Cooperation and Competition between the U.S. and China

The direction of the U.S.-China relationship is expected to be the key variable in the security order in Northeast Asia for a while. The rise of China and the “Rebalance to the Asia-Pacific Region” strategy of the United States will make their strategic cooperation and competition the most important factor in determining the stability of security in the region. The United States and China will in general maintain strategic cooperative relations, sharing

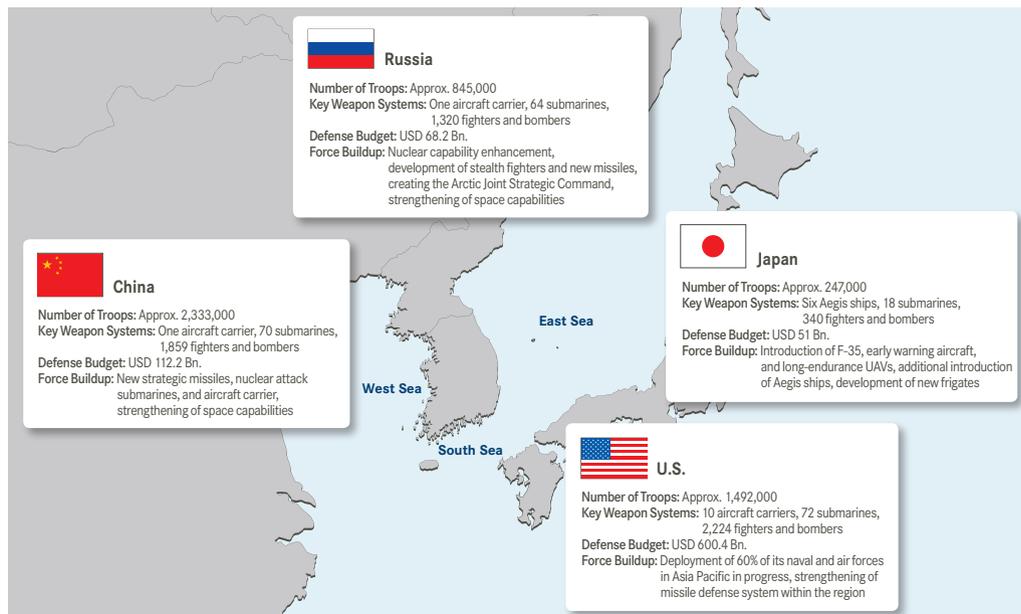
the goal of stability and peace in Northeast Asia. However, in the case that there are any collisions of core national interests between them, conflicts could deepen.

As the dual relationship of strategic cooperation and competition between the United States and China continues while Japan and Russia join the race toward increasing their national interests and influence, instability and uncertainty are likely to intensify. Neighboring countries increase their influence by bolstering military power, strengthening alliances and cooperative relations, and taking the initiative in multilateral talks. As a result, an arms race in the region is expected to grow further.

### 3. Increasing Influence and Arms Race in the Region

While the United States maintains its military superiority in Northeast Asia, China, Japan and Russia have vied to build up their own military strengths, centering on naval and air forces. In particular, competition among the nations in the region over outer space has grown fierce. Chart 1-2 summarizes the military strength of the four nations surrounding the Korean Peninsula.

Chart 1-2. Military Strengths of the Four Major Powers Surrounding the Korean Peninsula



\* Sources: *The Military Balance 2014* (The International Institute for Strategic Studies, February 2014), *Defense of Japan (Annual White Paper)* (2014) and others (defense budgets are for 2013.)

\* Number of fighters and bombers includes naval aircraft. Number of submarines includes strategic nuclear submarines.

**| The United States |** The United States seeks a solution to carry out its “Rebalance to the Asia-Pacific Region” strategy successfully while reducing its defense budget. It has reduced the size of its military, mainly the ground forces, while enhancing its long-distance power projection ability, in the course of strengthening its military forces in the Asia-Pacific region and cooperation with its alliances and partners. In March 2014, the United States released the Quadrennial Defense Review (QDR)<sup>1</sup> reflecting the end of the wars in Iraq and Afghanistan and the large-scale defense budget reduction. The Review presented defending the homeland, building global security, power projection, and decisive victory as the core principles of its national defense strategy.

In order to effectively respond to the Anti-Access and Area Denial (A2/AD)<sup>2</sup> strategy of China, the United States has developed new concepts of operations, including the Air-Sea Battle.<sup>3</sup> For that purpose, the United States has continued to build its naval and air force strengths in the Asia-Pacific region.

The Army is reorganized in such a way as to conduct operations anywhere in the world and remain prepared with high-level training and modernization. The number of regular army service members will be reduced to 440,000-450,000 from 570,000, the maximum size during wartime; however, special combat forces will be strengthened.

The Navy has consistently built on its strengths to satisfy its future strategic environment. It plans to increase the number of vessels and deploy 60% of all naval vessels, including a maximum of six aircraft carriers, to the Asia Pacific by 2020. Accordingly, the number of vessels in the Asia Pacific will increase to 58 in 2015 and 67 in 2020 from 51 in 2014. The Marine Corps will be reduced in size to 182,000 troops.

The Air Force is concentrating on securing next-generation fighters, aerial refueling tankers, transport aircraft and long-range stealth bombers. In response to threats that are becoming more sophisticated and precise, the Air Force is also focusing on the development of avionics, weapon load, and tactics and training.

The United States will work toward strengthening security cooperation with its regional alliances by 2023 and partners to carry out the “Rebalance to the Asia-Pacific Region” strategy. With Japan, the United States is in pursuit of revising the Guidelines for U.S.-Japan Defense Cooperation. It is also increasing its alliance cooperation with the ROK in various areas to increase combined defense capabilities. The United States has rotated its marine

---

1 QDR is a document issued every four years starting from 1997 by the U.S. Department of Defense, pursuant to the National Defense Authorization Act (NDAA), to report to the Congress on military operational plans and strategies.

2 This is a concept developed to block U.S. intervention after the break-out of the U.S.-China conflict over the Taiwan Strait in 1996.

- Anti-Access (A2): Blocking the U.S. military access into the operation area
- Area Denial (AD): Denial of free military actions by the U.S. military within the operation area

3 This is a joint operations concept to neutralize China's A2/AD attempts by forming a systematic and converged military management and development of the U.S. naval and air forces.

forces in Darwin, Australia and concluded the Enhanced Defense Cooperation Agreement with the Philippines in April 2014, which addresses the access and usage of local military bases and facilities by the U.S. military. In Singapore, the United States plans to rotate up to four littoral combat ships.

**| Japan |** Japan established the National Security Council in December 2013 as the control tower for its diplomacy and security. It also set up the National Security Strategy in which it presented Japan's strategic guideline toward strengthening and expanding the nation's role in the international community and the concept of "proactive pacifism."<sup>4</sup> In July 2014, the Japanese government reinterpreted its constitution in such a way that Japan could exercise its right of collective self-defense. In order to use the Self-Defense Forces against non-kinetic infringements on disputed islands and contribute to international peacekeeping activities, it took measures to expand the range of rear operations and use of arms. To extend the role of the Self-Defense Forces, the Japanese government makes efforts to revise the Guidelines for U.S.-Japan Defense Cooperation.

In December 2013, Japan released the National Defense Program Guidelines<sup>5</sup> and the Mid-Term Defense Program<sup>6</sup> and presented the concept of a "dynamic joint defense force." The dynamic joint defense force refers to a concept that is designed to respond to major security threats: China's military build-up and North Korea's nuclear and missile programs. Based on this concept, Japan intensifies its preparedness and military capabilities around the islands in the southern part of the Japanese Archipelago. Japan strengthens not only the U.S.-Japan alliance but also cooperation with the ROK, Australia and India.

The Ground Self-Defense Force has deployed the Coastal Surveillance Unit around the Senkaku Islands (also known as the Diaoyu Islands) to monitor the area and is in the process of creating the Amphibious Rapid Deployment Brigade to be in charge of amphibious operations. It also plans to establish the Ground Central Command for a prompt and flexible operation of divisions and brigades, the base unit of operations, and reorganize some divisions and brigades into "maneuver divisions and brigades" for immediate response to situations around the island areas.

The Maritime Self-Defense Force has set up a plan to strengthen its capabilities by 2023 by increasing the number of frigates to 54, including an Izumo-class frigate of 19,500 tons, and

---

4 This is an initiative whereby Japan plans to proactively contribute to the maintenance and construction of regional and global peace. Under the initiative, Japan intends to exercise its right of collective self-defense, strengthen cooperation with the international community, increase participation in UN peacekeeping activities, and increase official development assistance (ODA).

5 The guideline contains the defense policy for the next 10 years. It outlines security threat evaluation, defense policy, a basic concept of defense strengths, the focus and goal of increasing defense strength, etc.

6 The program contains the defense strength enhancement plan for the next five years. It outlines reorganizing of the Ground, Maritime and Air Self-Defense Forces and the goal of enhancement of military strength.

the number of submarines to 22. To improve defense capabilities against ballistic missiles, it also plans to increase the number of Aegis ships to eight from the present six. Also, improvements to existing frigates and transport ships are underway in order to command and control amphibious operations and deploy and transport troops and supplies.

The Air Self-Defense Force newly established the Airborne Early Warning Group, an early warning aircraft (E-2C) unit, in Okinawa in April 2014 to strengthen surveillance over the island areas. To secure air superiority, it set up an additional F-15 fighter unit in Okinawa and is about to field deploy new early warning aircraft, long-endurance unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs), vertical takeoff and landing aircraft, new aerial refueling tankers and transport aircraft, among others.

In an effort to prepare against cyber warfare, Japan established the Cyber Defense Unit under the Ministry of Defense in March 2014, integrating the cyber warfare functions of the Ground, Maritime and Air Self-Defense Forces. It also uses its Information Gathering Satellites to detect signs of attack at an early stage as part of an effort to utilize outer space in building a dynamic joint defense force. Such efforts contribute to comprehensive response capabilities in connection with ballistic missile attacks. A special unit in charge of space surveillance is also planned to be established to use outer space in a stable manner.

Japan has made efforts to extend the role of the Self-Defense Forces. In December 2013, it dispatched the Maritime Self-Defense Force's frigates to the CTF-151 combined maritime forces off Somalia for the first time. Other operations include emergency support activities such as support for the restoration of typhoon-stricken regions in the Philippines in November 2013 and the dispatch of Japanese troops in the search efforts for the missing Malaysian airplane in March 2014.

The Japanese government announced the "Three Principles on Transfer of Defense Equipment and Technology," which replaces the "Three Principles on Arms Export" in April 2014 to loosen restrictions on the export of weapons and military equipment. In order to improve the performance of defense equipment and reduce costs, Japan has actively participated in joint international development and production. It has also strengthened the level of cooperation in the international defense industry in the name of contributing to global peace.

**| China |** At the Third Plenum of the 18<sup>th</sup> Central Committee of the Communist Party of China in November 2013, China decided to set up the National Security Council to be the control tower of China's security policy, and launched the council in January 2014.

In its 2013 Defense White Paper, China made it clear that the goal and mission of its defense policy is to defend its sovereignty, security and territories to guarantee the peaceful development of the nation, and to maintain world peace and regional stability. China has moved fast in developing nuclear weapons and missiles and modernizing naval and air force

capabilities to achieve “victory in local wars under conditions of informatization,”<sup>7</sup> based on its active defense strategy.

China’s defense spending has been the second-largest in the world next to the United States since 2009. It has also modified its military system and organization while continuously pursuing to eradicate corruption to establish discipline in the military.

To meet the strategic demands for maneuver operations and multi-dimensional attack and defense, the Ground Force has developed army aviation units as well as mechanized and special operation units. In the process, it has strengthened air-land integration, long-distance maneuver and rapid response capabilities. In 2013, the Ground Force set up two additional aviation regiments and two special warfare units. Also, division-class armored mechanized units are now reorganized into regiment-class units.

The Navy is in pursuit of improving long-distance operation capabilities. In 2013, a total of 18 new surface combatants, including two destroyers, were commissioned. A new strategic nuclear submarine (the Jin class, Type 094), equipped with JL-2 ballistic missiles with a range of over 8,000 km, was added, raising the total number of strategic nuclear submarines to four. The aircraft carrier Liaoning was deployed to the military port in Qingdao in February 2013 and training is underway for field deployment. In May 2013, the Navy created a carrier-based aircraft unit for the first time in its history and has systematically trained pilots since then.

The Air Force develops advanced weapons, including new fighters, ground-to-air missiles, and radar, in accordance with its strategy of “combined attack and defense.” It has continued to develop stealth fighters since it successfully completed the test flight of the J-20 stealth fighter in January 2011 and the first test flight of the lightweight J-31 stealth fighter in October 2012. Also, air force modernization has been pursued continuously, including the ongoing research and development of the Y-20 large military transport aircraft and the integration of the new H-6K long-range strategic bomber into the force.

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Artillery Force controls nuclear and conventional ballistic missiles and focuses on improving capabilities in relation to strategic threats, nuclear counter-attack and precision strikes of conventional missiles. In December 2013, it test-launched the DF-41 strategic missile and the JL-2 submarine-launched ballistic missile.

As part of its efforts to become a space power, China successfully launched the Chang’e 3 probe and succeeded in landing the probe safely on the surface of the moon in December 2013.

---

7 This is a concept whereby naval and air force strengths are enhanced with advanced weapons to prepare against local wars in the field of informatized warfare, which leads to victory in war and allows the achievement of the objective of national defense toward anti-invasion and unification.

**| Russia |** Russia claims to advocate an “active defense strategy” in which it defends its sovereignty and seeks national interests based on “strong military power” in accordance with the National Security Strategy to 2020<sup>8</sup> and the Military Doctrine.<sup>9</sup> It is also in pursuit of defense reform under the flag of “building a strong Russia.”

In December 2010, Russia completed the “reorganization of its military structure and size” as the first phase of its defense reform. In December 2013, it completed the second phase of its defense reform, the “resolution of military welfare.” Since 2014, Russia has proceeded with the Weapons System Acquisition Plan for the Russian Armed Forces 2020 that requires a total of 758.5 billion U.S. dollars, with a focus on the creation of rapid reaction forces against low-intensity conflicts and modernization of conventional military power while maintaining a nuclear deterrence.

The Russian Ground Forces maintain a round-the-clock combat readiness posture by simplifying its command system that fits the characteristics of modern warfare and transforming its structure into a regiment-based standing army system. To project military power promptly into disputed areas, it also works on the creation of rapid reaction forces modeled after airborne troops. It also enhances high-tech forces such as next-generation tanks (ARMATA, T-99), air defense missiles (BUK-M3) and ground-to-air missiles (TOR) in order to prepare against local wars. As such, the Eastern Military District had modernized its equipment and has been reorganized to enhance maneuverability.

The Navy has continuously strengthened its forces based on strong support from the leadership. In 2013, it built two 19,400-ton Borei-class strategic nuclear submarines, one of which was included into the Pacific Fleet. The Navy plans to additionally deploy one strategic nuclear submarine and one French Mistral-class amphibious assault ship by 2014. In order to operate the new Borei-class strategic nuclear submarine, which carries submarine-launched ICBMs, the Navy is building a submarine base on the Kamchatka Peninsula.

The Air Force improves its precision strike and air defense capabilities. It plans to develop fifth-generation stealth fighters (T-50, PAK-FA), with enhanced capabilities for long-range operations and precision strikes, and uses them as the main fighters. In order to operate fifth-generation strategic bombers capable of using both nuclear and conventional weapons with an enhanced long-range projection capability, the Air Force upgrades the performance

---

8 This is a policy paper issued in 2009 and includes an extensive security structure encompassing politics, economy, and society. It outlines “the strengthening of Russia’s stature as a global power” as the objective of Russia’s national security, while proposing means for Russia’s entry into the top five largest global economies, as well as its stable economic development against the backdrop of a multi-polar international order.

9 This is a strategic doctrine regarding national defense issued in 2010. The doctrine identifies the eastern expansion of NATO, the establishment of the U.S. missile defense system, and the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction as the most serious military challenges. The newest doctrine also includes an overseas troop deployment clause aimed at protecting Russian nationals living abroad, and countermeasures for low-intensity conflicts which define nuclear weapons as a means of war deterrence. It further emphasizes the increase of advanced conventional weapons.

of its strategic bombers (Tu-95) and fourth-generation supersonic strategic bombers (Tu-160). In February 2014, it deployed 12 of its most advanced fighters, S-35s, to the far-east region to secure local air superiority. S-400 ground-to-air missiles with a range of 400 km are also in line to be deployed to strengthen air defense capabilities in the future.

Russia created the Arctic Joint Strategic Command in December 2014 to set up a unified command channel for its Arctic units and secure effective control over the Arctic Ocean. On the front of outer space, it has pursued improved space technology and capabilities to secure its superiority. Presently there are about 100 satellites deployed to support information gathering, communications and navigation. The strategic missile defense system and satellite defense system are planned to be integrated so that a unified aerospace defense system can be created, composed of early warning, command control and intercept systems.

# Section 3 North Korean Situation and Military Threats

---

North Korea has focused its energy on consolidating its monolithic rule and stabilizing its regime since Kim Jong-un took over. It has constantly used provocation-dialogue tactics in order to take the initiative in inter-Korean relations and escape from international sanctions and isolation. North Korea continues to pose a serious threat to the ROK and the international community by developing WMD such as nuclear weapons and ballistic missiles, reinforcing its conventional forces, conducting armed provocations in enemy contact areas, and continuously carrying out provocations such as cyber-attacks and infiltration of small UAVs.

---

## 1. North Korean Situation

**| Internal Situation |** North Korea is a single-party dictatorship regime ruled by the Korean Workers' Party (KWP), espousing a socialism based on its Juche ideology, Military First ideology and so-called Kim Il-sung-Kim Jong-il-ism.<sup>1</sup>

After completing the power succession process in April 2012, the Kim Jong-un regime focused on normalizing the weakened function of the KWP and strengthening its power by changing the generations in the leadership ranks of the party, military and government. In particular, Kim Jong-un publicly executed Jang Song-thaek, his uncle and political patron, in December 2013 in an effort to solidify Kim's monolithic rule. Also, Kim replaced Choe Ryong-hae with Hwang Pyong-so in the position of the Director of the General Political Bureau in April 2014. Such frequent reshuffling of leadership was done to consolidate the direct ruling system centered on the new power elites.

In order to overcome chronic economic difficulties, North Korea began to pursue “new economic management improvement measures”<sup>2</sup> immediately after the beginning of the Kim Jong-un regime. The Plenary Meeting of the Central Committee of the KWP in March 2013 decided to adopt “a new strategic line on building nuclear armed forces and carrying out

---

1 This is a new ideology of leadership and governance of the Workers' Party promulgated through the revision of the Regulations of the Korean Workers' Party on April 11, 2012.

2 This is a new economic policy pursued since 2012, of which the core policy is to expand the autonomy and incentives of individual economic units, including cooperative farms and cooperative factories.

economic construction simultaneously.” Nineteen Economic Development Zones were designated in local provinces, and some of them are presently being developed. However, due to the inherent limitations found in a socialist economic system, weak attraction of foreign capital and lack of administrative capability, the outcome remains minimal.

Commercial transactions are growing, mostly around local market places called “jangmadang.” Food production appears to be growing, with reserved rice being rationed out to cover shortages, showing signs of improvement in its food situation. However, workers below the middle class whose rations are limited still suffer food shortages.

In the areas bordering China, Chinese and other foreign commodities flow in actively and interpersonal information exchanges take place through communication devices such as mobile phones. Corruption and graft by government officials and the widening income gap among the different classes create discontent among the people. Also, illegal activities and aberrations such as drugs, prostitution and human trafficking are on the rise. In response to such changes, North Korea has placed importance on internal control by stepping up ideological education and surveillance by the public security agency and implementing measures against defectors.

**| Policy Toward the South |** North Korea aims to unify the Korean Peninsula under communism. To fulfill this goal, it has pursued provocation-dialogue tactics and a disguised peace offensive which repeats a cycle of “provocation, dialogue, compensation, and another provocation” in order to continuously develop nuclear weapons and missiles and secure practical gains from the South under the objective of unifying the Korean Peninsula under communism.

North Korea launched a long-range missile on December 12, 2012 and carried out its third nuclear test on February 12, 2013. On March 5, it declared the Armistice Agreement invalid in a statement issued by the spokesperson of the Supreme Command, and on March 8, it declared it would scrap the Inter-Korean Non-Aggression Agreement in its entirety. Then on March 30, North Korea issued a special statement in the name of its government, party and groups announcing that the inter-Korean relationship had entered into a state of war. On April 8, it issued a unilateral order that called for the withdrawal of the North Korean workers in the Kaesong Industrial Complex, putting a halt to its operation that had lasted for a decade.

Faced with the ROK government’s principle-based response toward North Korean provocations and threats and pressure from the international community, North Korea shifted to a dialogue mode with a visit by Choe Ryong-hae, the Director of the General Political Bureau, to China in May 2013. The South and North agreed to reopen the Kaesong Industrial Complex after seven meetings, beginning with a working-level meeting between

the respective authorities on July 6, 2013. On August 23, the two Koreas agreed on the reunion of separated families at a working-level contact; however, the reunion was unilaterally cancelled by North Korea on September 21, just four days prior to the scheduled date.

In 2014, North Korea conducted proactive peace offensives, as Kim Jong-un suggested the shaping of an environment for the improvement of inter-Korean relations in his New Year's speech and North Korea's National Defense Commission announced its "significant proposal."<sup>3</sup> On February 5, a South-North Red Cross working-level meeting reached an agreement on the reunion of



UAV found in Samcheok (April 2014)

separated families once again, resulting in the first reunion in three years from February 20 to 25 at Mt. Kumkang. Even during the reunion period, North Korea repeatedly launched rockets and ballistic missiles. In March and April 2014, small UAVs were found in such places as Paju in Gyeonggi-do, Baengnyeongdo Island, and Samcheok in Gangwon-do. North Korea conducted massive maritime firing near the Northern Limit Line (NLL)<sup>4</sup> of the West Sea on March 31 and April 29, followed by artillery fire against an ROK naval vessel on May 22. In particular, North Korea elevated tensions between the two Koreas by stepping up the level of crude criticism against the presidents and governments of the ROK and the United States after the declaration of the "Initiative for Peaceful Unification on the Korean Peninsula<sup>5</sup>" by President Park Geun-hye in March and a state visit by U.S. President Barack Obama in April.

On May 23, North Korea announced its plan to participate in the Incheon Asian Games, and on June 30, it resumed its peace offensives to the South by making the National Defense Commission's "special proposal" in which it restated the content of the National Defense Commission's significant proposal. At the same time, however, it continued a show of



Kim Jong-un conducting an on-site inspection of the central frontline in North Korea (June 2013)

<sup>3</sup> The suggestions were issued in the name of the National Defense Commission on January 16, 2014. The main points include the cessation of mutual slander, cessation of hostile military actions and denuclearization.

<sup>4</sup> Since its establishment on August 30, 1953, the NLL has been observed as the de facto maritime boundary between the South and North. The waters south of the NLL are under ROK jurisdiction. ROK and U.S. Defense Ministers noted that the NLL has been an effective measure to separate South-North military forces and prevent military tensions for over 60 years, and urged North Korea to acknowledge the effective value of the NLL and comply with it (at the 43<sup>rd</sup>-46<sup>th</sup> ROK-U.S. Security Consultative Meetings).

<sup>5</sup> This is an initiative announced during a visit to Germany on March 28, 2014.

force by carrying out surprise launches of Scud missiles and new multiple rocket launchers (MRLs) in different locations. In particular, North Korea further elevated tensions by carrying out surprise launches of a number of MRLs into the waters near the NLL in the East Sea, and such launches were carried out from the region near the Military Demarcation Line (MDL) adjacent to the East Sea that could be observed from the South.

On July 17, North Korea began to proceed with working-level meetings with South Korea over the issue of sending athletes and a cheering squad to the Incheon Asian Games. However, North Korea broke off the meetings with the excuse of South Korea's policy of accepting North Korean athletes in compliance with international practice and the regulations of the Games. As it became difficult for North Korea to send a cheering squad due to internal problems, it unilaterally notified the South on August 29 that it would cancel its plan to send a cheering squad and stepped up the level of criticism toward South Korea while blaming the South for the situation. Meanwhile, North Korea sought to turn the situation around with an agreement to resume the second round of senior-level inter-Korean talks when Hwang Pyong-so, the Director of the General Political Bureau, and Choe Ryong-hae and Kim Yang-gon, the Secretaries of the KWP, made a surprise visit to the South on the day of the closing ceremony of the Incheon Asian Games. However, just three days after such agreement, a naval skirmish broke out near the NLL on October 7, and on October 10, North Korean soldiers fired at balloons released by ROK civil organizations. Using such incidents as an excuse, North Korea proposed "exclusive emergency talks" to the ROK government, and on October 15, a "senior-level inter-Korean military talk" took place, but ended without any results. The frosty inter-Korean relationship remains strained.

Even after Kim Jong-un's rise to power, North Korea has not shown any sincerity about building mutual trust and improving the inter-Korean relationship, as it continues to foster division in the ROK-U.S. Alliance and develop nuclear weapons and missiles as well as conduct military threats with the objective of unifying the Korean Peninsula under communism.

**| Foreign Policy |** North Korea uses a dual policy in which it focuses on developing WMD, including nuclear weapons, while seeking to improve its relations with the international community to escape from isolation.

The UN stepped up its sanctions against North Korea by adopting Resolutions 2087 and 2094 to respond to North Korea's long-range missile launch on December 12, 2012 and its third nuclear test conducted on February 12, 2013. Despite such measures, North Korea continues to develop nuclear weapons and missiles, threatening the international community.

Since North Korea scrapped the "February 29 Agreement between the United States and

North Korea<sup>6</sup> by launching long-range missiles in April 2012, official dialogue between the two has stopped. Seeking to be a nuclear power, North Korea openly declared its plan for a fourth nuclear test and reactivated nuclear facilities in Yongbyon, posing a continuous threat to the international community. At the same time, North Korea suggested resuming the Six-Party Talks without conditions, and on June 16, 2013, through a significant statement by a spokesperson for the National Defense Commission, it proposed to hold senior-level bilateral talks with the United States. On December 18, 2014, the UN General Assembly characterized North Korea's human rights abuse as a crime against humanity and adopted the "Resolution on North Korean Human Rights"<sup>7</sup> referring to taking the case to the International Criminal Court (ICC) to hold North Korea accountable. North Korea rejected the resolution in its entirety and denounced the international community, including the ROK and U.S. governments.

As North Korea launched long-range missiles and conducted its third nuclear test despite China's opposition, China has joined part of the sanctions against North Korea. In an effort to recover its strained relationship with China and seek political and economic support, North Korea sent Choe Ryong-hae as a special envoy to China in May 2013. Choe's visit to China brought Li Yuanchao, the Vice President of China, in return, showing signs of a restoration of bilateral relations. However, their relationship became estranged again due to North Korea's unwillingness to give up its nuclear program and threats of its fourth nuclear test. When Xi Jinping, the President of China, visited South Korea before North Korea on July 3, 2014, North Korea expressed its discontent through an indirect criticism toward China.

In the meantime, as isolation from the international community deepens due to China joining in on the sanctions, North Korea has attempted to reduce its political and economic reliance on China and strengthen its cooperative relationship, centering on economy, with Russia. In November 2014, Choe Ryong-hae was sent to Russia as a special envoy to find ways to promote North Korea's bilateral relations with Russia in various sectors, including politics, economy and military.

In addition, North Korea continues its contacts with Japan over issues such as Japanese abductees and the repatriation of Japanese remains in North Korea. North Korea sought to improve its relations with Japan by agreeing on May 29, 2014, to reinvestigate the Japanese abductees issue on the condition that Japan lifts its sanctions against North Korea. However,

---

6 An agreement reached at the third U.S.-North Korea High-level Talks held in Beijing from February 23 to 24, 2012. Under the agreement, North Korea would take preliminary steps toward denuclearization and declare a moratorium on its nuclear and missile programs, cease its operation of nuclear facilities in Yongbyon, and permit IAEA investigators to return to North Korea. The United States agreed in return to provide nutrients amounting to 240,000 tons to North Korea.

7 The resolution was passed with 116 approvals, 20 dissents and 53 abstentions. On November 22, 2014, it was adopted as the formal agenda of the UN Security Council (11 approvals, two dissents and two abstentions).

due to North Korea's tepid response toward Japan's demand for a fundamental solution to the kidnapping issue, the prospects for the negotiations are unclear.

North Korea has increased its trade and cooperation with outer-regional countries such as Syria and Cuba by increasing arms transactions and military exchanges.

## 2. Military Strategy and Military Command Structure

**| Military Strategy |** While placing its top priority on the survival of its regime, North Korea seeks to achieve the fundamental objective of unifying the Korean Peninsula under communism. To achieve this objective, North Korea maintains a military strategy based on ideological war, surprise attacks, hybrid warfare and lightning warfare while seeking various tactics. In particular, after taking over the regime, Kim Jong-un has strengthened the readiness posture for not only local provocations, but also aggression.

In particular, in order to secure military superiority over the South, North Korea focuses on reinforcing asymmetric forces such as WMD, including nuclear weapons, missiles, long-range artillery, an underwater force, special operation forces, and cyber warfare units. North Korea currently operates about 6,000 cyber warfare troops and conducts cyber warfare, including the interruption of military operations and attacks against major national infrastructure, to cause psychological and physical paralysis in the South. The performance of their conventional weapons is also continuously upgraded.

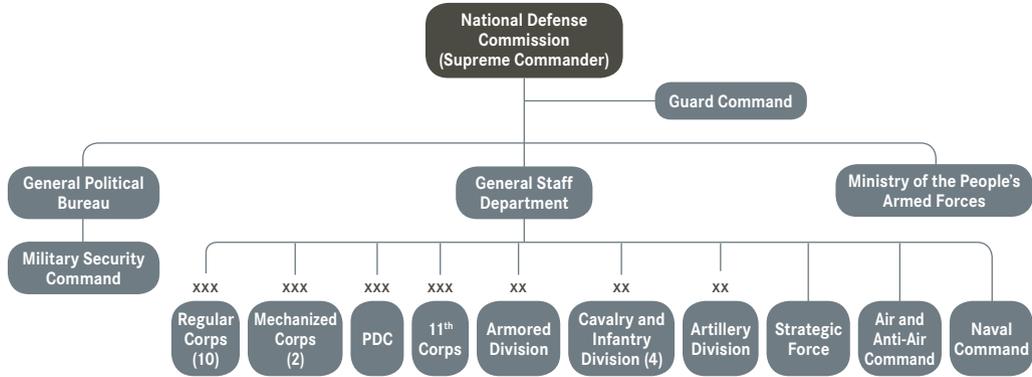
**| Military Command Structure |** Kim Jong-un exerts command and control over the North Korean military organization as the de facto head through his capacity as the Supreme Commander of the Korean People's Army, First Chairman of the National Defense Commission and Chairman of the Central Military Commission of the KWP.

The National Defense Commission is the supreme entity on military guidance under the Socialist Constitution of North Korea. The role of the Commission is to establish the major policies of the regime and guide its defense policies, including building military strength. Under its leadership, there are the General Political Bureau, General Staff Department and Ministry of the People's Armed Forces. The General Political Bureau oversees the military's party organization and political ideologies, while the General Staff Department exercises command over military operations. The Ministry of the People's Armed Forces represents North Korea's armed forces to the outside world and exercises administrative control over the military, including diplomacy, logistics and finances.

The Party Central Military Commission "discusses and decides on measures to attain the Party's military line and policy" in compliance with the Regulations of the Korean Workers'

Party and “leads the overall defense projects in line with the Party.” The military command structure of North Korea is presented in Chart 1-3.

Chart 1-3. North Korea’s Military Command Structure



XXX: Corps, XX: Division, PDC: Pyongyang Defense Command, Strategic Force: Former Strategic Rocket Command, Air and Anti-Air Command: Former Air Force Command

### 3. Military Capabilities

**| Ground Force |** The Ground Force is composed of 10 regular corps, two mechanized corps, the Pyongyang Defense Command, the 11<sup>th</sup> Corps, one armored division, four mechanized divisions, etc. under the control of the General Staff Department of the National Defense Commission.

With 70% of the Ground Force positioned south of the Pyongyang-Wonsan line, North Korea is maintaining a military posture capable of conducting a surprise attack at any time. In particular, the 170 mm self-propelled guns and 240 mm MRLs in forward positions are capable of surprise, massive concentrated fire on the Greater Seoul Metropolitan Area (GSMA). The 300 mm MRL currently under test development by North Korea is able to reach the middle part of the ROK considering its maximum firing range. North Korea reinforced its artillery forces, including 122 mm towed MRLs, in the coastal area north of the NLL of the West Sea and frontline areas, while setting up covered trenches to enhance survivability, and has forward deployed its mechanized units and amphibious and air combat forces, all of which contribute to strengthening its capabilities to commit provocations and attacks against the five islands in the West Sea and borders at any time. Equipment modernization is also constantly pursued, such as replacing the existing T-54 and T-55, the main tanks of the armored and mechanized units, with the Chonma-ho and Songun-ho tanks. In addition, armored and mechanized forces are also being reinforced and redeployed, greatly

strengthening their maneuver and strike capabilities and enhancing flexibility in operations.

Special operation forces are currently estimated at 200,000 strong. The special operation forces have a diverse array of strategic, operational, and tactical units, including the 11<sup>th</sup> Corps, the light infantry division of the forward corps, and light regiment of the forward divisions. The role of these special operation forces is extended to cover infiltration into the forward and rear areas to strike major units and facilities, assassinations of key personnel, disruption of rear areas and hybrid operations. Infiltration is to be made during a war through underground tunnels, holding areas for infiltration in the Demilitarized Zone (DMZ), submarines, Landing Craft Air Cushions (LCACs), AN-2 aircraft, helicopters and various other methods. The key assets of the North Korean Ground Force are shown in Chart 1-4.

**Chart 1-4. Key Assets of the North Korean Ground Force**



**| Navy |** The Navy, organized under the Naval Command, is composed of two fleet commands on the East and West Seas, 13 naval squadrons and two maritime sniper brigades.

Of the North Korean Navy, 60% is forward deployed to the south of the Pyongyang-Wonsan line, allowing it to maintain surprise attack capability. However, the geographic separation of the Eastern and Western Fleets makes flexible operations difficult for the North Korean Navy, while its composition of small, high-speed vessels further limits deep sea operations.

Surface forces are mainly composed of small, high-speed vessels such as guided missile boats, torpedo boats, patrol boats, and fire support patrol craft that will carry out missions supporting Ground Force advancement in connection with ground operations, as well as coastal defense missions. In particular, North Korea has built new mid- and large-size vessels and various kinds of Very Slender Vessels (VSVs), enhancing its strike capability on the surface of the sea.

Underwater forces are composed of about 70 Romeo-class submarines and submersibles. The mission of these underwater forces is to disrupt sea lanes of communication, lay mines, attack surface vessels, and support the infiltration of special operation forces. In particular, North Korea is improving its capability for underwater attacks, as it appears to be building

new types of submarines and submersibles, including a new submarine that can carry ballistic missiles, following the development of new torpedoes.

Amphibious forces are composed of about 260 vessels, including LCACs and high-speed landing craft. Their mission is to infiltrate special operation forces into rear areas to strike major military and strategic facilities and secure crucial spots in coastal areas for landing. The key assets of the North Korean Navy are as shown in Chart 1-5.

**Chart 1-5. Key Assets of the North Korean Navy**



**| Air Force |** The North Korean Air Force Command has changed its name to the Air and Anti-Air Command. Under the command there are four flight divisions, two tactical transport brigades, two air force sniper brigades and air defense units.

The North Korean Air Force has positioned its forces in four different zones. Most North Korean Air Force aircraft are outdated models. About 40% of the 820 combat aircraft are forward deployed south of the Pyongyang-Wonsan line.

The Air Force is capable of launching surprise attacks against the ROK's control and command facilities, air defense assets and industrial facilities without further deployment or adjustment of aircraft. AN-2 aircraft and helicopters can transport large-scale special operation forces for infiltration. The Air Force has recently produced and deployed UAVs for reconnaissance and strikes.

North Korea's air defense system centers on the Air and Anti-Air Command, and it is organized in an integrated manner by aircraft, ground-to-air missiles, anti-aircraft artillery and radar air defense units. The primary air defense responsibility is delegated to the respective air divisions that are in charge of each of the four divided zones of North Korea's airspace. SA-2 and SA-5 ground-to-air missiles are deployed in forward areas and east and the west coastal areas, while SA-2 and SA-3 ground-to-air missiles and anti-aircraft artilleries are concentrated around the Pyongyang area, forming a multilayer air defense network.

In addition, ground controlled intercept bases, early warning bases and many other radar air defense units are spread out across North Korea, allowing them to scan throughout the Korean Peninsula. The establishment of an automated air defense command and control

system, designed to enhance precision in surveillance and reduce response time for the operations of radar air defense units, is also underway. The key assets of the North Korean Air Force are as shown in Chart 1-6.

**Chart 1-6. Key Assets of the North Korean Air Force**

				
Combat Aircraft Approx. 820	Surveillance and Control Aircraft Approx. 30	Transport Aircraft (including AN-2s) Approx. 330	Training Aircraft Approx. 170	Helicopters Approx. 300

**| Strategic Force |** The Strategic Rocket Command has changed its name to the Strategic Force, being promoted to the military command at the same level as the Ground Force, Navy, and Air and Anti-Air Command. The Strategic Force is likely to carry out similar functions as those of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Artillery Force of China and the Strategic Missile Troops of Russia. It is expected that their effort toward increasing asymmetric forces will continue in the future.

**| Reserve Forces |** The reserve forces in North Korea are composed of the Reserve Military Training Unit, which is a subject of combat mobilization, the Worker-Peasant Red Army established by workplace and region, the Red Youth Guard, which is a military organization in middle schools (advanced classes), and paramilitary units. The age eligibility of mobilization is between 14 and 60 years old, which corresponds to 7.7 million people or roughly 30% of the population.

The Reserve Military Training Unit consists of about 600,000 members who can play a key role in augmenting the combat capability to the regular armed forces during a contingency. The unit maintains a level of training that is commensurate with the regular armed forces. The status of the reserve forces in North Korea is as shown in Chart 1-7.

**Chart 1-7. North Korean Reserve Forces**

Category	Strength	Note
Total	Approx. 7.7 million	
Reserve Military Training Unit	Approx. 0.6 million	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Subject to combat mobilization</li> <li>- Men between 17-50 and women between 17-30</li> </ul>
Worker-Peasant Red Army	Approx. 5.7 million	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Equivalent to the ROK's Homeland Reserve Forces</li> <li>- Men between 17-60 and women between 17-30</li> </ul>

Red Youth Guard	Approx. 1 million	• Middle school (advanced class) military organization (boys and girls between 14-16)
Paramilitary units	Approx. 0.4 million	• The Guard Command, Logistics Mobilization Guidance Bureau, etc.

**| Strategic Weapons |** North Korea has continuously developed nuclear weapons, ballistic missiles, and chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear and high-yield explosive (CBRNE) weapons to secure strategic offense capabilities and supplement conventional forces. North Korea secured nuclear materials obtained from the reprocessing spent fuel rods after operating a 5 MWe reactor located in the Yongbyon nuclear facility in the 1980s. Then, in October 2006, May 2009 and February 2013, North Korea conducted three nuclear tests. It is estimated that North Korea possesses about 40 kg of plutonium that can be used to produce nuclear weapons after several rounds of reprocessing spent fuel rods, and it is also assessed that a highly enriched uranium (HEU) program is underway. North Korea's ability to miniaturize nuclear weapons also seems to have reached a considerable level.

Since beginning the development of ballistic missiles in the 1970s, North Korea produced and fielded SCUD-B (range of 300 km) and SCUD-C (range of 500 km) missiles in the mid-1980s. In the 1990s, North Korea tested and fielded the Nodong missile (range of 1,300 km), while in 2007, it fielded the Musudan missile (range of over 3,000 km). Following these deployments, North Korea has gained direct strike capabilities against South Korea, Japan, Guam, and other surrounding countries.

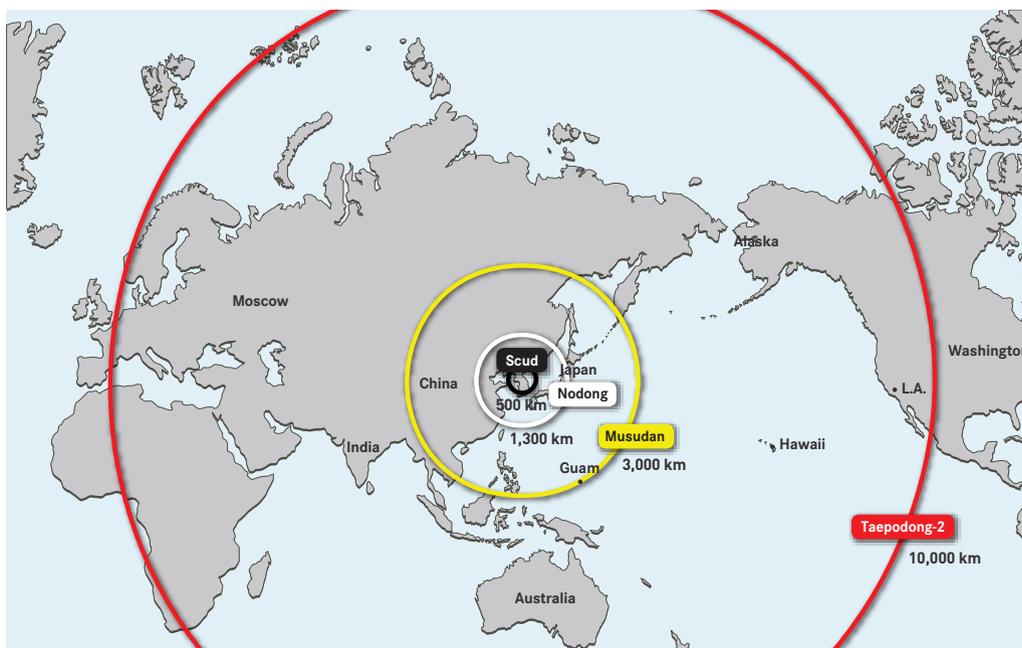
North Korea test-launched a Taepodong-1 missile in 1998 and Taepodong-2 in 2006. It is estimated that North Korea has the ability to threaten the continental United States with its missiles as shown with five launches of long-range missiles, including the ones in 2009 and in April and December 2012. The ranges of North Korea's missiles by type are shown in Chart 1-8.



The new KN-08 missile made public in a military parade marking the 60<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Armistice Agreement (July 2013)

North Korea began producing chemical weapons in the 1980s and it is estimated that it has about 2,500 to 5,000 tons in stock. It appears that North Korea is also capable of cultivating various types of biological agents such as anthrax, smallpox, and pest on its own and producing them into biological weapons.

Chart 1-8. Ranges of North Korea's Missiles by Type



**| War Sustainment Capability |** Despite its economic difficulties, North Korea places a top priority on developing its defense industry in order to maintain a war sustainment capability. It possesses about 300 armaments factories, while civilian factories designated for the transition to armaments production in wartime are capable of making such a transition in a short period of time.

The majority of North Korea's wartime material is stored in underground storage facilities, and the stockpile of these materials is estimated to last one to three months. However, it seems that North Korea's ability to sustain a prolonged war will be limited without additional purchases or external assistance.

# Chapter 2

## National Security Strategy and Defense Policy





ROK Armed Forces Key Leaders Conference (December 2014)

# Section 1 National Security Strategy

---

The National Security Strategy is a national action plan covering the comprehensive and systematic use of available resources and means to ensure national security. The National Vision of the Park Geun-hye administration is to open a “New Era of Hope” in which the happiness of the people and national development are put in a virtuous circle. To achieve the vision in the field of national security, the administration has established the National Security Strategy. The Ministry of National Defense (MND) is concentrating its efforts on attaining the National Security Strategy by proactively responding to ever-changing security environments and supporting national policies by maintaining a solid security posture.

---

## 1. National Vision and the National Security Objectives

The National Vision of the ROK government is a “New Era of Hope” in which the happiness of each individual becomes the bedrock of the development of the nation. This era of hope is pursued in tandem with national development in a virtuous cycle. To realize this vision, the government has established four principles of the administration: economic revival, the happiness of the people, cultural enrichment and the establishment of a foundation for peaceful unification. The establishment of a foundation for peaceful unification is a priority that embraces the entire domain of security including national defense, unification and diplomacy. To this end, the government has specified the National Security Objectives: “safeguarding the territory and sovereignty of the ROK and ensuring the safety of the people,” “establishing sustainable peace on the Korean Peninsula and preparing for an era of unification,” and “promoting cooperation in Northeast Asia and contributing to world peace and development.”

First, the government will concentrate its efforts on protecting the nation’s territory and



National Security  
Strategy e-book

sovereignty and people's lives and properties from multifaceted and complex threats such as armed provocations by North Korea as well as current and future threats and transnational threats.

Second, the government seeks to realize sustainable peace on the Korean Peninsula and prepare for the era of unification by building trust between the two Koreas. Above all, the government will make the utmost efforts to closely cooperate with neighboring countries and the international community to induce North Korea to abandon its nuclear program and take the right path. The ROK is, furthermore, committed to achieving the normalization and stable development of inter-Korean relations and aims to bring unification to the Korean Peninsula by building its determination, support and readiness for unification, from inside and outside the ROK.

Third, the ROK government seeks to bolster national security by promoting cooperation in Northeast Asia and contributing to world peace and development. The ROK first seeks to build trust among the nations of the Northeast Asian region through dialogue and cooperation, and transform the dynamics of conflict into a framework for cooperation. By extending the energies of coexistence and reconciliation accumulated in Northeast Asia, the government will induce cooperation with Eurasian nations and advance toward peace, stability and shared prosperity in the wider region that encompasses Asia and Europe.

## **2. Tenets of the National Security Strategy**

In order to achieve its National Security Objectives, the ROK government has set the tenets of the National Security Strategy: “establishing a solid security posture,” “pursuing the trust-building process on the Korean Peninsula,” and “promoting trust-based diplomacy.” These are implementation strategies for defense, unification and diplomacy to establish a foundation for peaceful unification.

First, strong national security is the basis for the very existence of the nation, improved inter-Korean relations, and lasting peace on the Korean Peninsula. The ROK government will also further strengthen a thorough response posture to deter provocations by North Korea and sternly retaliate in response to any provocation by North Korea. The government will also be equipped with the capability to effectively respond to North Korean nuclear capabilities and missile threats. Any transnational threats such as terrorism, cyber-attacks, and massive disasters, as well as current and future threats, will be responded to proactively and preemptively. In order to enhance security capabilities, the government will expand security cooperation by strengthening bilateral and multilateral cooperation through the development of the ROK-U.S. Alliance and strategic cooperation with neighboring countries.

Second, the trust-building process on the Korean Peninsula is a way to actively foster peace. On a basis of trust, the ROK government will seek to encourage North Korea to change, promote the normalization and development of inter-Korean relations, and achieve lasting peace on the Korean Peninsula. The government will seek to lay the groundwork for the gradual development of inter-Korean relations and peaceful unification by building trust incrementally. This will be a balanced approach to ensure that national security is not neglected on account of inter-Korean relations. The government will seek to implement policies regarding North Korea and unification together with the people on a basis of public consensus and support. And the government will strengthen cooperation with the international community to resolve the North Korean nuclear issue, establish peace on the Korean Peninsula, and create an environment conducive to unification. The government aims to take the strengths of the policies of previous administrations and build on them in a fitting way. In the meantime, it seeks to resolve conflicts in society and forge consensus amongst the public on issues related to North Korea and unification.

Third, the ROK government seeks to make full use of trust-based diplomacy to resolve the so-called “Asia’s Paradox” in which the level of political and security cooperation lags far behind the deepening economic interdependency. The Northeast Asia Peace and Cooperation Initiative (NAPCI) is a key policy for the realization of trust-based diplomacy in Northeast Asia. Through this initiative, the ROK government seeks to establish a practice of multilateral cooperation in the region starting with softer issues on which countries can easily engage in cooperation, such as climate change, terrorism, drug trafficking and the environment, and broaden the scope of cooperation to include more controversial issues. The government will seek to build greater consensus on the need for North Korea to change, and further strengthen cooperation with the international community to induce North Korea to renounce nuclear development and promote human rights. In the process, the government will explain to various countries about the legitimacy and necessity of unification to build consensus and further consolidate support from the international community for unification. As a middle power, the government will also strive to earn greater trust in the international community by fully assuming its responsibilities and role in the international arena, and seek to promote an attractive image of the nation.

## Section 2 National Defense Policy

---

The MND has set “Advanced Elite Military” as its vision in order to realize the National Security Objectives and National Defense Objectives in rapidly changing security environments, outlining seven key Tenets of the National Defense Policy towards its attainment. Furthermore, the MND has set “Defense with a Robust Foundation, Defense Preparing for the Future” as the defense management objectives. To this end, the MND has specified four priorities in defense management: “building a full-spectrum national defense posture,” “strengthening future-oriented defense capability,” “developing the ROK-U.S. Alliance and strengthening external defense cooperation,” and “creating a happy and advanced defense environment.”

---

### 1. National Defense Objectives

The National Defense Objectives are: “protecting the country from external military threats and invasions,” “supporting peaceful unification,” and “contributing to regional stability and world peace.” The specific interpretation of the objectives is as follows:

First, “protecting the country from external military threats and invasions” means being prepared to meet the present military threats from North Korea and at the same time being prepared to meet other potential threats to our peace and security. North Korea poses a serious threat to our security by developing and increasing its large-scale conventional arsenal, nuclear program, missiles and other weapons of mass destruction, and by continually perpetrating acts of armed provocation such as the attack on the ROK Ship *Cheonan* and the shelling of Yeonpyeongdo Island. As long as these threats persist, the North Korean regime and its armed forces, which are the entities who pose these threats, will remain as our enemies.

Second, “supporting peaceful unification” means contributing to a peaceful unification by deterring war, alleviating military tensions, and establishing peace on the Korean Peninsula.

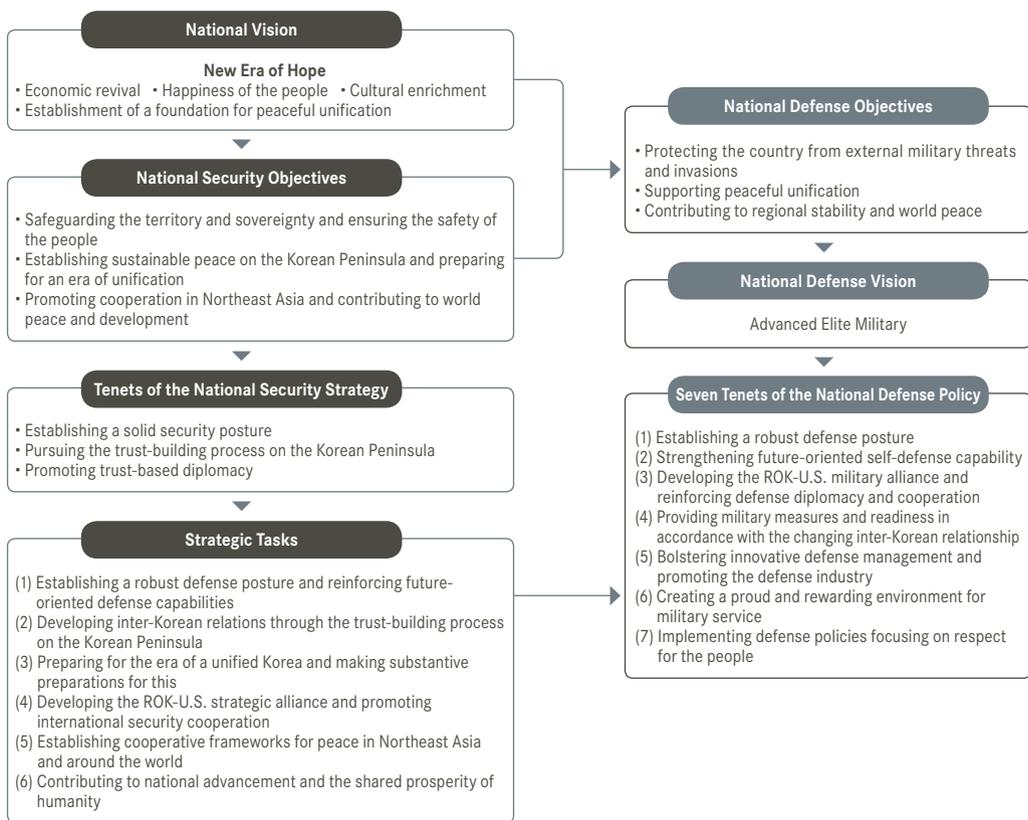
Third, “contributing to regional stability and world peace” means contributing to the stability of Northeast Asia and world peace by advancing our friendly and cooperative relationships with neighboring countries on the basis of the ROK-U.S. Alliance, and through active participation in international peacekeeping operations.

## 2. National Defense Vision and Tenets of the National Defense Policy

**| National Defense Vision |** The ROK military has to build the capability and posture to achieve the National Vision, National Security Objectives, and National Defense Objectives by responding effectively to various security threats amidst changing security environments. In that regard, the MND has adopted “Advanced Elite Military” as its mid- to long-term National Defense Vision. The term “advanced” refers to a military for the people in which all troops have upright values and mindsets; a military culture trusted by the people is in place; and a creative and effective defense operations system with excellent defense capabilities has taken root, making it an exemplary model in the world. The term “elite” refers to a military in which strong and brave troops are armed with the most optimal weapons and equipment; trained as we fight; and ready to exert the best, unified combat power. The combined term “advanced elite military” means a military that is elite, advanced and has the posture and capability to fight against the enemy and win.

**| Tenets of the National Defense Policy |** The ROK military has identified and is pursuing the following seven key Tenets of the National Defense Policy as its consistent policy direction toward achieving the National Defense Vision: (1) Establishing a robust defense posture; (2) Strengthening future-oriented self-defense capability; (3) Developing the ROK-U.S. military alliance and reinforcing defense diplomacy and cooperation; (4) Providing military measures and readiness in accordance with the changing inter-Korean relationship; (5) Bolstering innovative defense management and promoting defense industry; (6) Creating a proud and rewarding environment for military service; and (7) Implementing defense policies focusing on respect for the people. To accomplish such tenets, the ROK military will actively move ahead with “Creative Defense,” a new paradigm in which defense strength is generated by incorporating creativeness, science and technology into national defense management. The National Defense Vision and Tenets of the National Defense Policy are as shown in Chart 2-1.

Chart 2-1. National Defense Vision and Tenets of the National Defense Policy



### 3. Four Priorities in Defense Management

The ROK military has set “Defense with a Robust Foundation, Defense Preparing for the Future” as the goal of defense management, in consideration of its National Defense Vision, Tenets of the National Defense Policy, and security environments, among others. “Defense with a Robust Foundation” refers to the concept of making all troops serve in the military safely and happily with tightened discipline; creating an environment for national defense where the troops can focus on their combat missions; and building a full-spectrum national defense posture to fight off enemies through realistic education and training as well as thorough combat preparation.

“Defense Preparing for the Future” refers to fostering an “advanced elite military” that can contribute greatly to regional stability and world peace by shaping a favorable strategic environment and building new defense capabilities whereby the ROK military can take the initiative in defending and unifying the Korean Peninsula. To achieve such a goal, the ROK

military has specified and is actively pursuing four priorities in defense management, which are: “building a full-spectrum national defense posture,” “strengthening future-oriented defense capability,” “developing the ROK-U.S. Alliance and strengthening external defense cooperation,” and “creating a happy and advanced defense environment.”

**| Building a Full-spectrum National Defense Posture |** Based on the ROK-U.S. Combined Defense System, the ROK military will effectively deter any local provocation and aggression and retaliate decisively against any provocations, shattering the will to conduct another provocation. In particular, the ROK military has strengthened deterrence and response capabilities by developing the Tailored Deterrence Strategy (TDS)—a joint strategy between the ROK and the United States—in the face of WMD threats from North Korea, including nuclear weapons and missiles. The establishment of the “Kill Chain” and the Korea Air and Missile Defense (KAMD) is also in progress to enhance response capabilities in the early phase of war.

The ROK military will strengthen response capabilities in the face of potential threats and will proactively and preemptively respond to any transnational and non-military threats. The ROK military is concentrating its efforts to create a combat mission-oriented military capable of achieving victory against the enemy. To achieve this goal, it has streamlined the missions of field units and is pursuing the completeness of its combat capability. Furthermore, the military is reinforcing mental strength so that our service members can cultivate the traits of a warrior, patriotism, a clear idea on who our enemy is, a sound personality and civic consciousness.

**| Strengthening Future-oriented Defense Capability |** Based on the solid ROK-U.S. Combined Defense System, the ROK military is strengthening, among others, its defense capability to secure the deterrence and response capabilities sufficient to shatter North Korea’s will to provoke, and to proactively respond to any potential, transnational and non-military threats. In addition, the ROK military has been implementing an effective defense reform, aiming to develop the force structure into an elite one and to build a highly efficient and advanced defense management system.

The ROK military will develop the Agency for Defense Development (ADD) into a world-class defense research and development institute while pursuing active civilian-military technology cooperation, such as transferring defense technology to the private sector. Furthermore, it plans to train elite officers by fostering creative and leading figures capable of “mission-oriented leadership,” and reinforcing a recruiting system for outstanding human resources.

### **| Developing the ROK-U.S. Alliance and Strengthening External Defense Cooperation |**

Both the ROK and the United States are building a full-spectrum combined defense system with stability and peace on the Korean Peninsula as the priority goal in an effort to be prepared against the threats of various provocations from North Korea. The two nations have effectively deterred North Korean nuclear and missile threats through the ROK-U.S. TDS. They will also pursue a more stable wartime operational control (OPCON) transition, taking into account the ROK military's readiness to take the lead in the combined defense system as well as the security environment. The ROK and the United States have made continued efforts to strengthen the military alliance and have expanded the level and scope of cooperation to resolve regional and global security issues, moving toward building a comprehensive strategic alliance.

Based on the ROK-U.S. Alliance, the ROK military will strengthen bilateral and multilateral defense exchanges and cooperation with neighboring countries to deter provocations from North Korea and stably manage regional uncertainties. It will also improve strategic communications with neighboring countries by installing hotlines between defense and military authorities and holding frequent senior-level strategic dialogues. The ROK military will engage in international peacekeeping operations more actively in order to contribute to global peace and stability.

**| Creating a Happy and Advanced Defense Environment |** The ROK military is establishing an "open barracks culture" in which human rights are respected, discipline is well maintained, and the military is trusted by the people. It is also creating an environment in which service members can perform their military service in a productive manner through personal development. Welfare for service members will be considerably improved to the extent that service members' cultural needs are met beyond mere daily convenience.

In an effort to improve the military's medical support system, the ROK military will improve barracks conditions which focus on the prevention of diseases and adjust the functions of military hospitals to be more professional and specialized. The Armed Forces Trauma Center will be established for the treatment of serious cases in need of intensive care such as bullet wounds, burns, multiple fractures and so forth.

The ROK military is also planning to provide high-quality, tailored child care services in consideration of the unique characteristics of military service, as part of the effort to reinforce welfare programs for the families of service members. A legal and systemic groundwork will follow to safeguard the motherhood of female service members.

There will be an increase in support for retired service members to guarantee their living standards after retirement. Such arrangements will motivate incumbent members to focus on their combat missions with pride and a sense of reward.

# Chapter 3

## Establishing a Robust Defense Posture



Section 1 Maintaining a Full-spectrum Military Readiness Posture	46
Section 2 Reinforcing Response Capabilities against North Korean Nuclear and WMD Threats	59
Section 3 Establishing an Integrated Civilian-Government-Military-Police Defense Posture	65
Section 4 Assuring Combat Readiness through Realistic Training	68



Army search and reconnaissance training

# Section 1 Maintaining a Full-spectrum Military Readiness Posture

---

The ROK military maintains an immediate and firm response posture against North Korea's diverse and multifaceted provocations. It also maintains a military readiness posture by developing wartime plans in preparation against North Korean aggression provocations and maximizing its combined and joint operation execution capability. The ROK military is maximizing current forces efficiency and possessing forces capable of responding to all forms of provocations through a prioritized refinement of forces' vulnerable points.

---

## 1. Military Organization and Forces

**| Organization of the Joint Chiefs of Staff |** The Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS) executes joint and combined operations through operational command<sup>1</sup> and supervision over combat operation units, and through command<sup>2</sup> and supervision over joint units.

The JCS was preceded by the "Combined Staff Council" (1948), "Joint Staff Council" (1954), and "Combined Staff Bureau" (1961). Its predecessors were established as nonpermanent organizations within the Ministry of National Defense (MND) and were employed until the JCS was established in 1963. Currently the JCS operates under one Vice Chairman with four chief directorates and four offices with a plan to newly establish a fifth office, the Office of Analysis and Experimentation,<sup>3</sup> as of January 1, 2015. The organizational restructuring is shown in Chart 3-1.

---

1 The authority of a commander over subordinate units when performing operational duties.

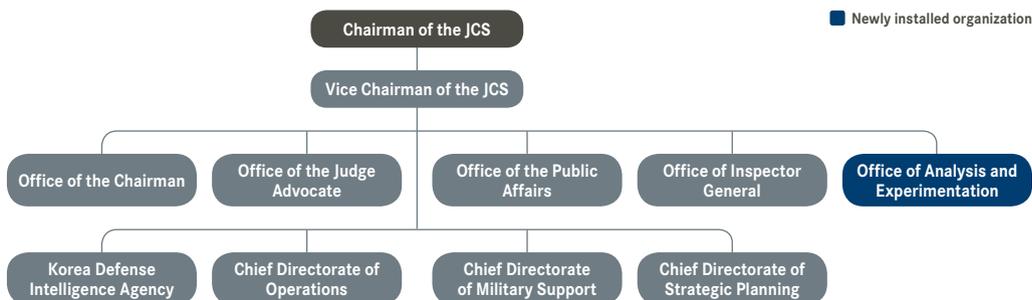
2 Full authority legally exercised by the commander through rank and position over subordinate units to execute the commander's duties.

3 Separated from the Chief Directorate of Military Support to independently carry out analysis and experimentation functions.



Army public  
advertisement

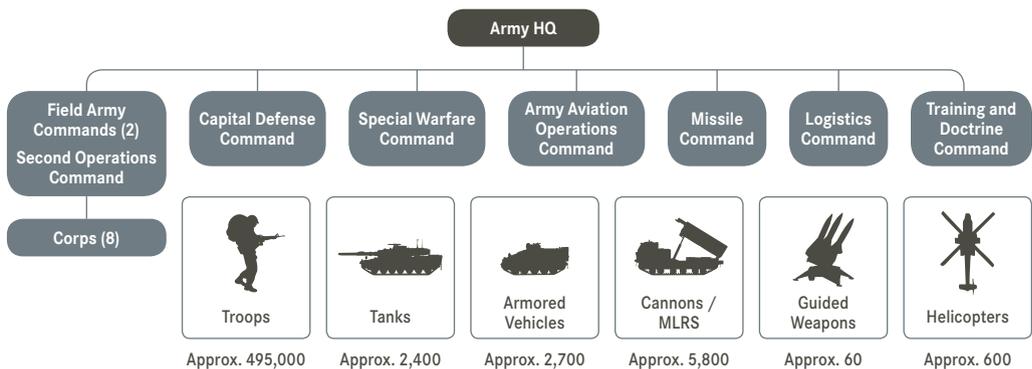
**Chart 3-1. Key Organizations of the Joint Chiefs of Staff**



The JCS reinforces its task performance system toward the direction of close mutual support and integration among the Army, Navy and Air Force by strengthening their jointness. In order to cultivate the warfighting capabilities required for the ROK military to take the lead in combined operations in preparation for the wartime operational control (OPCON) transition in the future, the JCS will develop an organization in charge of coordinating with the USFK and strengthen the relevant organizations.

**| Organization and Forces of the Three Services |** **The Army** consists of the Army HQ, two Field Army Commands, the Second Operations Command, Capital Defense Command, Special Warfare Command, Army Aviation Operations Command, Missile Command, and other supporting units. The key organizations and forces of the Army are shown in Chart 3-2.

**Chart 3-2. Key Organizations and Forces of the Army**



\* Missile Command: Former Army Missile Command  
 \* Tanks, armored vehicles, cannons / MLRS, and guided weapons include the forces of the Marine Corps.

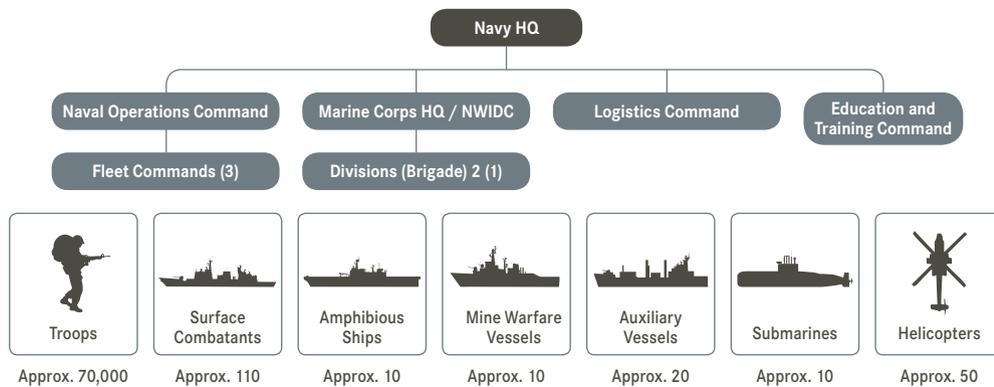
The First ROK Army (FROKA) and Third ROK Army (TROKA) execute defense in their respective forward area of responsibility (AOR) all the way up to the Military Demarcation Line (MDL), and the Second Operations Command conducts missions for maintaining the

stability of the rear area and war sustainment capability. The Capital Defense Command executes missions to maintain the functions of the capital such as protecting major facilities and municipal infrastructure. Other commands carry out missions pertaining to special warfare, aviation operations, logistics support and education and training.

The Army focuses on reinforcing the daytime and nighttime close combat capabilities of units at and below the battalion level in order to equip them with the capability to execute joint operations while maximizing the efficiency of its existing forces. It also continuously secures surveillance and reconnaissance forces such as surveillance UAVs; maneuver and strike forces such as K-2 tanks, K-21 infantry combat vehicles, and attack helicopters; and counter-fire operations forces such as the multiple launch rocket system (MLRS).<sup>4</sup>

**The Navy** consists of the Navy HQ, Naval Operations Command, Marine Corps HQ/ North-West Islands Defense Command (NWIDC), and other supporting units. The key organizations and forces are shown in Chart 3-3.

**Chart 3-3. Key Organizations and Forces of the Navy**



\* Including the troops of the Marine Corps (approx. 29,000) \* NWIDC: North-West Islands Defense Command

The Naval Operations Command commands overall naval operations and executes anti-surface operations,<sup>5</sup> anti-submarine operations,<sup>6</sup> mine and counter mine operations, amphibious operations,<sup>7</sup> etc. The Fleet Commands operate surface combatants such as

4 A weapon system that launches multiple rockets arrayed in a box-shaped or cylinder-type launch pad, enabling simultaneous and large quantity fire power.  
 5 Operations to secure and maintain maritime control, or to destroy or neutralize the enemy's surface forces by using surface combatants, submarines, and aircraft.  
 6 Operations to ensure the unrestrained use of the sea by destroying or neutralizing enemy submarines.  
 7 Operations to block or neutralize the enemy's naval forces by using mines, or to deny the use of mines by the enemy.



Army promotional video



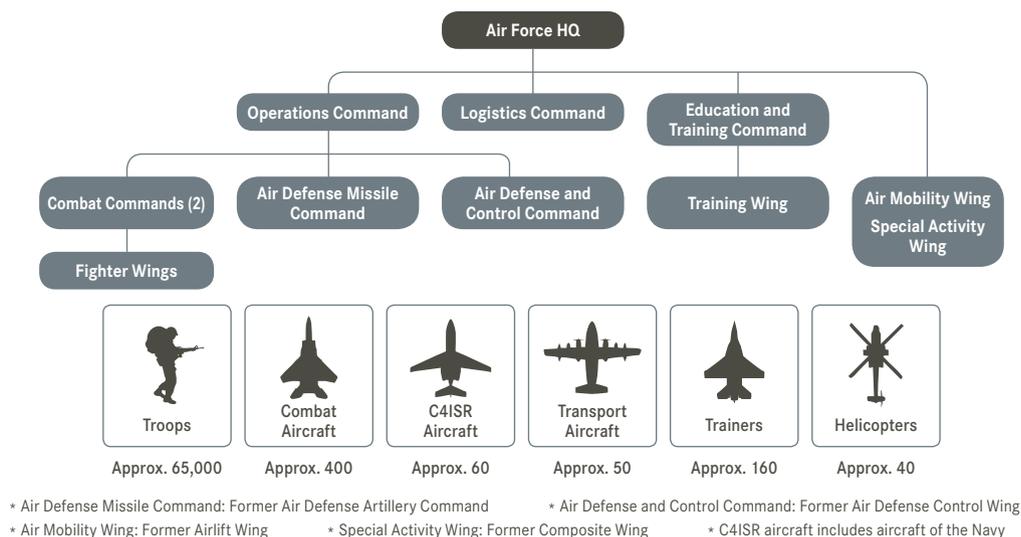
Navy promotional video

destroyers, frigates, patrol vessels, and Patrol Killer Mediums (PKMs), and carry out defense missions in their responsible waters. The Marine Corps HQ executes wartime amphibious operations as its main mission and the NWIDC<sup>8</sup> carries out peacetime security and defense missions in and around the Northwest Islands. Other commands carry out logistics support and education and training missions.

The Navy, as an axis of the joint forces, aims for the integrated employment of the multi-dimensional forces throughout underwater, surface, and air to respond effectively and appropriately to existing and potential threats. For this objective, it plans to acquire next-generation submarines, Aegis-class destroyers, next-generation destroyers, next-generation frigates, next-generation patrol killers, maritime patrol aircraft, maritime operational helicopters, etc. Meanwhile, the Marine Corps will be developed into a force capable of performing diverse missions such as defending strategic islands or conducting multi-dimensional, high-speed amphibious operations.

**The Air Force** consists of the Air Force Headquarters, Air Force Operations Command, and other operation and supporting units. The key organizations and forces are shown in Chart 3-4.

Chart 3-4. Key Organizations and Forces of the Air Force



<sup>8</sup> Established on June 15, 2011 under the Marine Corps HQ to counter North Korean threats towards the five islands that make up the Northwest Islands (Baengnyeongdo, Daecheongdo, Socheongdo, Yeonpyeongdo and Udo Islands). The Marine Corps Commandant concurrently serves as the NWIDC Commander.



Marine Corps  
promotional video



Air Force  
promotional video

The Air Force Operations Command (AFOC) controls air operations, and executes counter air operations (CAOs),<sup>9</sup> air interdiction (AI) operations,<sup>10</sup> close air support (CAS) operations<sup>11</sup> and others. The Southern and Northern Combat Commands under the AFOC defend the airspace of responsibility under the control of the operations command. The Air Defense Missile Command executes full-spectrum air defense missions against air attacks by enemy aircraft, missiles, etc. The Air Defense and Control Command has been reorganized from the Air Defense and Control Wing as of June 2013 and executes missions such as air control within the ROK theater, air surveillance, aircraft identification, and air operation support.

The Air Force works to accomplish outstanding air superiority by acquiring next-generation fighters (F-X) and the next-generation Korean fighters (KF-X) in the future. Also, the Air Force works to possess precision strike capabilities and long-range operational capabilities by establishing a reconnaissance and intelligence collection system and a space surveillance system, and introducing aerial refueling tankers.

**| The United States Forces Korea and Augmentation Forces |** The United States Forces Korea (USFK) consists of the Eighth U.S. Army (EUSA), the U.S. Naval Forces, Korea (NAVFOR-K), U.S. Air Forces, Korea (USAFK), U.S. Marine Forces, Korea (MARFOR-K), and Special Operations Command, Korea (SOCKOR). The USFK Commander concurrently serves as the Commander of the United Nations Command (UNC) and the Commander of the ROK-U.S. Combined Forces Command (CFC). The key organizations and forces are shown in Chart 3-5.

The U.S. augmentation forces that will be deployed to support the defense of the ROK during wartime consist of approximately 690,000 troops from the Army, Navy, Air Force, and Marine Corps, approximately 160 vessels, and approximately 2,000 aircraft. Depending on how a crisis situation develops, the U.S. augmentation forces will be deployed based on the Flexible Deterrence Option (FDO)<sup>12</sup> or the Time Phased Force Deployment Data (TPFDD).<sup>13</sup> If the crisis level rises on the Korean Peninsula, the FDO takes effect to deter war and mitigate the crisis situation during which designated forces are deployed accordingly. If the attempt to deter war fails, all combat and supporting units will be

---

9 Operations to secure air superiority by destroying or neutralizing the enemy's aerospace forces and air defense systems.

10 Operations to limit the enemy's reinforcement, resupply and maneuverability by interdicting, disrupting, delaying and destroying the enemy's military potential before it can be used effectively on the ROK Army and Navy.

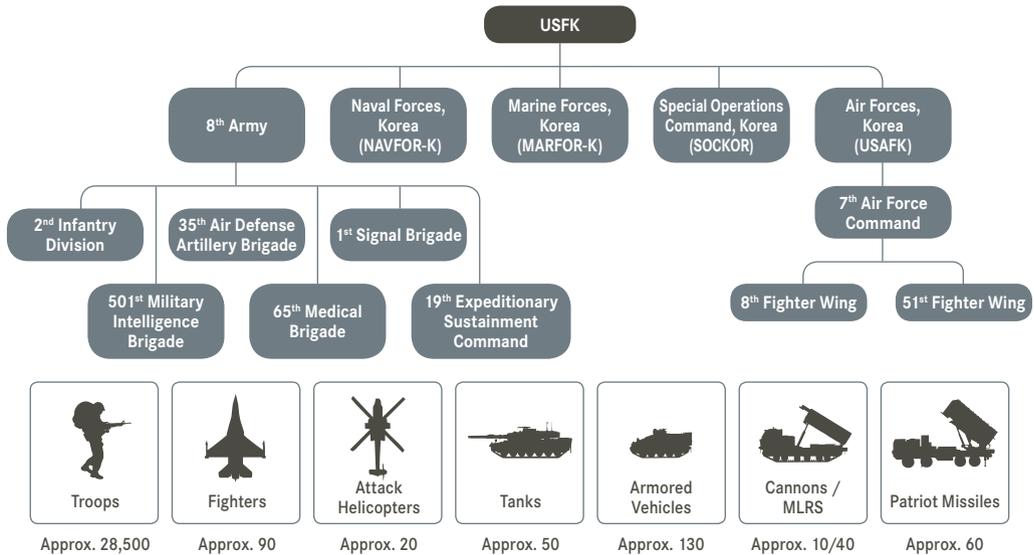
11 Operations to guarantee the survivability of friendly forces and the successful execution of military objectives by supporting the friendly forces' offensive, counter-offensive or defensive operations through attacks on the enemy forces that are engaging the friendly forces in close proximity.

12 This is a political, economic, diplomatic and military crisis action procedure in the CFC Crisis Action Standard Operating Procedures (CASOP) that has to be executed promptly to deter war before the warning of an outbreak of war.

13 Force deployment list and data of the U.S. augmentation forces for executing ROK-U.S. combined operation plans.

augmented as pre-planned by the TPFDD to execute ROK-U.S. combined operational plans.

Chart 3-5. Key Organizations and Forces of the USFK



## 2. Military Readiness Posture

### | Developing Early Warning and Crisis Management Systems |

The ROK military operates ROK-U.S. combined intelligence assets, including signal and imagery assets and satellites, to maintain 24-hour surveillance and an early warning system for the Korean Peninsula and its adjacent islands. In particular, various indicators such as long-range missile launches and nuclear test threats posed by North Korea are assessed by the ROK and the United States.

In order to effectively respond to North Korean provocation threats, the ROK established a crisis management system and an ROK-U.S. combined response system. In March 2013, the ROK-U.S. Combined Counter-Provocation Plan (CPP) was drafted to deter North Korean provocations and to promptly respond should deterrence fail. With this plan, the crisis

"If North Korea provokes, we must respond firmly at the onset of war without any political considerations. As the commander-in-chief of the armed forces, I shall place trust in the decisions made by our military, which faces North Korea directly, against sudden and unexpected provocations by North Korea."

- President Park (at the reporting session by the MND, April 1, 2013)



President Park Geun-hye inspecting the Eulji Unit in the forward area (December 2013)

## Territory of the Republic of Korea



\* Source: National Geographic Information Institute

management system was improved in overall aspects as it supplemented the ROK-U.S. joint response procedures and specified the response manuals for each crisis situation.

The ROK and the United States continue to develop the joint crisis management system by revising the Crisis Action Standard Operating Procedures (CASOP), strengthening joint crisis management exercises and improving interoperability in command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence (C4I).

**| Maintaining a Readiness Posture against Infiltration and Local Provocations |** Since its third nuclear test in February 2013, North Korea has continuously heightened tension on the Korean Peninsula by repeating rhetorical threats to turn Seoul and Washington into a “sea of fire,” penetrating the Northern Limit Line (NLL) of the West Sea under the pretext of patrolling fishing operations, and conducting military provocations by firing coastal artillery shells into the waters near the NLL in the Northwest Islands area. Furthermore, North Korea used small UAVs to illegally infiltrate into ROK territory and continued to launch multiple rockets and missiles despite the condemnation of the international community. Recently, North Korea fired at balloons carrying leaflets released by ROK civil organizations, and the threat of electronic warfare and cyber threats such as GPS jamming and information system attack are also present.

The ROK military has fully prepared immediate response forces considering North Korea’s provocation trend and the changes in its force deployment and establishes a posture that is capable of promptly, accurately and sufficiently responding to provocations with joint and combined forces on site.

While developing operational plans against fire provocations and surprise occupation of the Northwest Islands by North Korea, the ROK military is improving its detailed response measures by analyzing North Korea’s strengthened forces such as 240 mm multiple rocket launchers (MRLs) and fire support patrol crafts, and recent provocation indicators. Furthermore, the ROK military



Minister of National Defense Han Min-koo inspecting the Yeonpyeong Unit (July 2014)



GOP security operation by the Army 21<sup>st</sup> Division



Martial arts demonstration by the 3<sup>rd</sup> Airborne Special Warfare Brigade



Aerial infiltration operation by the Navy Special Warfare Flotilla



Introductory video of the Air Force Special Forces

continuously reinforces its readiness posture by increasing surveillance and strike capabilities as well as fortifying positions to ensure survivability.

In order to strengthen the alert posture in the enemy contact areas, fences and surveillance equipment are upgraded, and an advanced security system<sup>14</sup> is being established. The military operates its surveillance and reconnaissance assets in an integrated manner and tracks and manages targets. In addition, it is developing a response plan that can promptly and accurately strike target areas and objects.

In response to the threat posed by small North Korean UAVs, the ROK military has further reinforced its readiness posture by strengthening security and air surveillance, as well as maintaining a robust Army aviation strike posture. In addition, the air defense operation system is refined by adjusting detection and identification means and strengthening education and training.

In the Greater Seoul Metropolitan Area (GSMA) and the rear area, the military is improving its response plans by taking into account potential provocation threats such as terror attacks on key national infrastructure and cyber-attacks. Since 2013, the Army Special Warfare Command and the Marine Corps have been designated and operated as “Quick Reaction Forces” in preparation against various terror attacks, and they regularly carry out operational and training activities to prepare against attacks against national infrastructure and security targets.

Also, a thorough readiness posture is maintained to resolutely safeguard the ROK territory, territorial waters and airspace in the East, West and South Seas, including the five northwest islands as well as Marado, Ulleungdo and Dokdo Islands. In particular, the ROK military maintains a strong readiness posture based on the unwavering resolve to safeguard Dokdo Island, which is undoubtedly, inherently the territory of the ROK in accordance with historical, geographical facts and international law.

**| Establishing a Readiness Posture against Aggression |** North Korea maintains a massive-scale conventional arsenal based on offensive military strategies and continues to expand its strength with asymmetric forces such as nuclear, chemical and biological weapons, and missiles. Most of North Korea’s arsenal is positioned south of the Pyongyang-Wonsan line, enabling surprise attacks and lightning war without additional repositioning or adjustment of forces.

---

14 This is a surveillance-detection-control system that integrates security forces, surveillance equipment such as CCTVs, and detection equipment installed on the borderline fences.



ROK military  
promotional video



Dokdo Island  
promotional video

During contingency situations, the ROK military shall operate its joint and combined forces offensively in all areas of land, air, sea and cyberspace. By seizing the initiative in the early phase of a war through the execution of effect-based simultaneous and integrated operations, the ROK military shall paralyze North Korea's warfighting capability and will, and achieve a decisive victory in a short time. To enable such, the ROK military develops doctrines that maximize combined operation<sup>15</sup> and joint operation<sup>16</sup> execution capabilities, and implements realistic joint and combined exercise and training. Furthermore, by maintaining a close coordination system between the ROK and the United States, the ROK military has established a combined defense system in preparation against a potential aggression by North Korea.

The ROK military will continue to maintain and reinforce a combined defense posture capable of strongly responding to North Korean aggression provocations based on the robust ROK-U.S. Alliance.

**| Establishing a Rapid Response Mobilization Posture |** In order to actively respond to various changes such as downscaling of standing forces due to the reduction of military resources, the ROK military builds up strong reserve forces to possess forces able to deter war and strengthen war sustainment capability. To this end, the ROK military develops a range of measures enabling the efficient mobilization of human and material resources during wartime or national emergencies.

First, the mobilization system is improved to enable immediate combat upon mobilization. There is a plan to amend the United Defense Act to enable the selective mobilization of necessary resources while minimizing the impact on the public and national economy during integrated defense situations such as local provocations, disasters or terrorist attacks. Mobilization supplement battalions are organized under the homeland divisions and the Marine Corps HQ with a full set of elements comprising troops, equipment and supplies to enable timely reinforcement in case of massive losses in forward areas during wartime. To enable mobilization reserve forces to immediately execute missions upon arrival at their designated units, the ROK military is currently test operating a "regionalized resource management system"<sup>17</sup> which designates reserve forces to receive training at the same military unit every year.

---

15 Operations where forces from two or more countries collaborate according to an official agreement or treaty for a common long-term objective.

16 Operations where two or more Services among the Army, Navy and Air Force organize a joint unit or joint task force (if necessary) to achieve a common objective.

17 A system to manage resources per region by designating troop mobilization areas as Region 1 (Seoul, Incheon, Gyeonggi-do, Gangwon-do) and Region 2 (south of Chungcheong-do).

For the smooth mobilization of materials, the ROK military develops measures in cooperation with the related agencies to check any changes of companies designated for mobilization in real time and provide incentives to those companies that participate in government procurement biddings. Furthermore, the military expands the appointment of emergency planners who perform emergency readiness tasks at companies for mobilization to promote the effectiveness of the material mobilization during wartime.

### **3. Readiness Posture against Transnational and Non-military Threats**

**| Reinforcing a Readiness Posture against Terrorism |** The ROK military published the “Military Terror Crisis Response Manual” in October 2013 based on the need to better understand terrorism and to be able to respond against terrorism in a timely and appropriate manner. Also, the military has designated and operates the Quick Reaction Forces (QRF) and the CBRNE Special Force for Counter-terrorism to enable seamless initial actions during counterterrorism operations. A “joint tactical discussion on counter-terrorism” is held annually to share the latest domestic and overseas intelligence on terrorism and firmly maintain a cooperation system, including effective response measures against terrorism.

In particular, the MND reinforces its readiness posture against biological agents during naturally occurring biological threat situations and man-made bioterrorism attacks through various efforts which include the conclusion of a mutual agreement with the Korea Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in August 2014 aimed at enabling prompt and effective responses against bioterrorism.

Readiness against terrorism threats heavily depends on the establishment of a cooperation system among countries, as the responses and measures of a single country have limitations. Therefore, the ROK and the United States have held an annual bioterrorism exercise called “Able Response” since 2011 to improve joint response capabilities such as information sharing and medical collaboration against potential biological terror attacks and natural disease outbreaks on the Korean Peninsula.

The role of the military is expected to expand as the threat of terrorism increases. In order to address such an increasing threat, the MND cooperates with the related agencies to prepare against various terrorist threats, and actively participates in security cooperation activities, thereby maintaining a close collaboration system with the international community.

**| Establishing a Readiness Posture against Cyber Warfare |** Cyber threats are becoming more sophisticated with the development of information and communication

technology. The DDoS attack in July 2009, cyber terror in March 2013 and cyber attack in June 2013 are prime examples of the severity of cyber threats.

The ROK military has developed the Master Plan for Defense Cyber Policy with the objective of securing offensive defense and response capabilities as well as ensuring complete victory in cyber warfare. Based on the master plan, the military is first modifying related laws and regulations such as the United Defense Act and the National War Instruction Guidance to conduct systematic and legal cyber operations. Second, the military has published the “Joint Cyber Operations Manual” in advance to provide a unified guideline necessary for engaging in cyber warfare that combines aspects from both physical and cyber warfare. Third, the military has established a foundation for cyber operations by organizing a new office that handles overall cyber operations in the Joint Chiefs of Staff. Fourth, the military has created an environment enabling immediate response during a crisis by amending manuals and establishing a cyber crisis management system for national defense.

Cyber experts are the core of cyber warfare. Accordingly, the ROK military is obtaining cyber experts through various channels. In collaboration with the Ministry of Science, ICT and Future Planning, the military will be able to utilize professional manpower trained in the private sector starting from 2015. Korea University has established the Department of Cyber Defense, which will foster specialized cyber experts from 2016. The MND is holding the White Hat Contest annually in collaboration with the National Intelligence Service (NIS) to discover cyber talents at an early stage as well as implementing manpower management policies to utilize cyber specialists effectively.

In order to develop technologies related to cyber warfare systematically, the MND has developed the Mid- to Long-term Cyber Technology Roadmap. At the same time, it is improving countermeasures against new cyber attacks and developing cyber intrusion tolerant systems<sup>18</sup> and other technologies.



ROK-U.S. Cyber Cooperation Working Group (February 2014)

As cyber warfare has no boundaries in time and space and it is difficult to identify friend or foe, countermeasures from a single country have limitations. In response to such limitations, the ROK is establishing a transnational cooperation system with friendly nations, including the United States. Starting from 2014, the ROK and the United States are holding the ROK-U.S. Cyber Cooperation Working Group twice a year to discuss issues such as information sharing, cyber policy / strategy / doctrine, and ways to strengthen cooperation

<sup>18</sup> Technology that maintains the core functions of core systems, even during cyber attacks.

related to manpower/education/training. The MND also strives to lay a foundation for multilateral cyber security cooperation. To this end, the Cyber Working Group (CyberWG) was launched at the 2<sup>nd</sup> Seoul Defense Dialogue (SDD) in 2013, and the concept paper for the CyberWG was discussed in 2014.

The ROK military will continue to reinforce its cyber warfare response capabilities in all areas by establishing a cyber warfare execution system and operation doctrine, performing research and development on response technologies, securing specialized manpower, and establishing a transnational cooperative system.

**| Establishing a Readiness Posture against Disaster Threats |** With the increase in damages caused by pirates in the seas near Somalia, the Cheonghae Unit of the ROK Navy has executed counter-piracy operations since 2009, ensuring the safety of Korean vessels operating in and around the Gulf of Aden.

To support recovery efforts from the damage caused by a typhoon in the Philippines, the ROK military dispatched the Araw Contingent to the area in December 2013. Also, in March 2014, when the Malaysian government requested support in the search efforts to locate the missing Malaysian airplane in the South China Sea, the ROK military dispatched two aircraft.

As such, the ROK government not only collaborates with individual countries but also actively engages in international cooperation to effectively respond to various newly emerging disaster threats. The ROK also participates in the ASEAN Regional Forum (ARF) and ASEAN Defence Ministers' Meeting Plus (ADMM-Plus),<sup>19</sup> which are multilateral security forums held among Asia-Pacific countries to respond in unison to transnational and non-military threats.

Under the ADMM-Plus there are six Experts' Working Groups which deal with humanitarian assistance and disaster relief, maritime security, military medicine, counter-terrorism, peacekeeping operations, and humanitarian mine action, respectively. The ROK government not only actively participates in these venues but also carries out a leading role as it serves as the co-chair with Cambodia of the peacekeeping operations group from 2014 to 2017.

---

<sup>19</sup> This is a Defense Ministers' conference in which 10 ASEAN member states and eight dialogue partners (ROK, United States, Japan, China, Russia, India, Australia, and New Zealand) participate, and it is held every three years.

## Section 2 Reinforcing Response Capabilities against North Korean Nuclear and WMD Threats

The ROK military effectively deters the use of nuclear weapons and missiles by North Korea based on the ROK-U.S. Tailored Deterrence Strategy (TDS), and prepares against North Korean nuclear and missile threats by developing the Kill Chain and Korea Air and Missile Defense (KAMD) system stage by stage. It also reinforces its response capabilities against North Korean chemical and biological threats by establishing the Comprehensive Development Plan for Chemical and Biological Threat Response Capabilities and conducting ROK-U.S. combined biological defensive training. To meet the demands of future warfare, the ROK military develops defense space power phase by phase by establishing the Base Plan for Defense Space Power Development, etc.

### 1. Developing Deterrence and Response Strategies Against Nuclear and Missile Threats

**| Establishing and Developing the Tailored Deterrence Strategy |** A deterrence strategy plays an important role in strengthening security on the Korean Peninsula and the region. The United States has provided a nuclear umbrella<sup>1</sup> through the Security Consultative Meeting (SCM)<sup>2</sup> since 1978 based on the ROK-U.S. Mutual Defense Treaty. Since the 38<sup>th</sup> SCM in 2006, right after North Korea's first nuclear test, extended deterrence<sup>3</sup> has been guaranteed.

The necessity to reinforce the existing extended deterrence strategy has increased as security threats, such as North Korea's second nuclear test in 2009, the attack against the ROK Ship *Cheonan* and the shelling of Yeonpyeongdo Island in 2010, etc., have increased. The ROK Minister of National Defense and the U.S. Secretary of Defense reached a mutual agreement to develop the Tailored Deterrence Strategy through the Extended Deterrence

<sup>1</sup> A concept of extended deterrence ensuring the security of non-nuclear ally nations with U.S. nuclear forces against threats posed by a nuclear state.

<sup>2</sup> The highest-level defense consultative body between the ROK and the United States, held annually, alternating in the ROK MND and the U.S. Department of Defense.

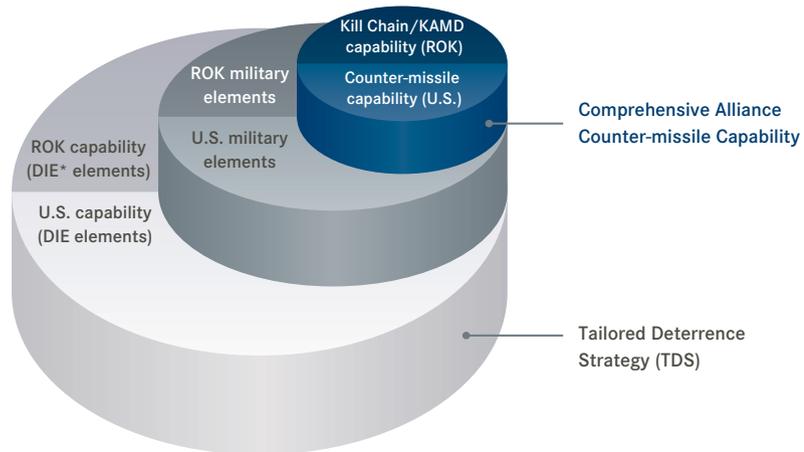
<sup>3</sup> The United States is providing deterrence forces such as a nuclear umbrella, conventional forces, and missile defense capabilities to protect its allies from the enemy's threats of nuclear weapons and WMD.

Policy Committee (EDPC)<sup>4</sup> at the 43<sup>rd</sup> SCM in 2011. On October 2, 2013, after two years of consultation, the ROK Minister of National Defense and U.S. Secretary of Defense signed on the “ROK-U.S. Tailored Deterrence Strategy against North Korea’s nuclear and weapons of mass destruction (WMD) threats” at the 45<sup>th</sup> SCM.

The Tailored Deterrence Strategy is a ROK-U.S. combined deterrence strategy with an improved aspect of the existing concept of extended deterrence; it has been optimized to fit the situation on the Korean Peninsula with a consideration of the characteristics of North Korean government leaders and nuclear weapons and WMD. It includes applicable military and non-military response options tailored to different phases of nuclear crises from the phase of a threat of nuclear weapons or WMD to actual use. The significance of the Tailored Deterrence Strategy lies in the fact that it establishes a basis for a combined response by fully utilizing the deterrence means and ways of an allied nation to maximize the effect of the Alliance capacity.

In order to maintain the credibility and capabilities of extended deterrence, the ROK government will continue to specify the Tailored Deterrence Strategy while achieving its effectiveness through close consultations with the United States.

**Chart 3-6. Tailored Deterrence Strategy Diagram**



\* Diplomacy, Information, Economy

**| Phased Development of the Kill Chain and Korea Air and Missile Defense |** The ROK military improves its military response capabilities to proactively prepare against North

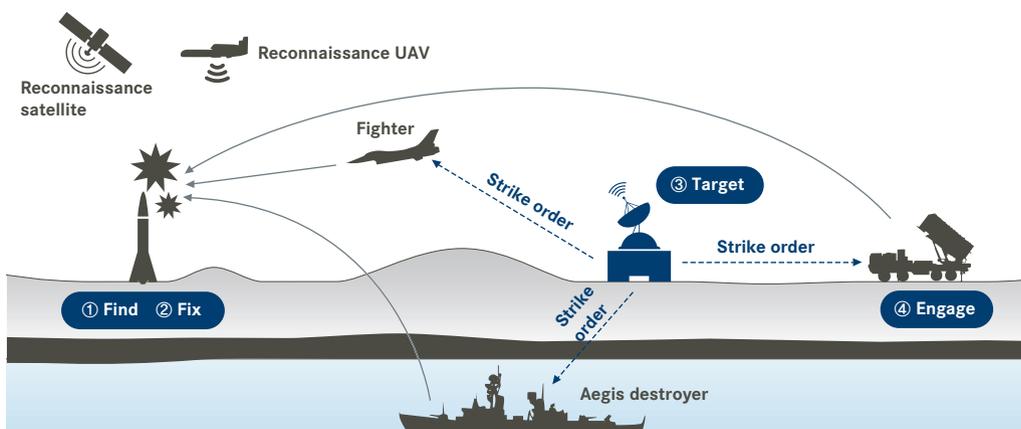
<sup>4</sup> A ROK-U.S. consultative body established in 2011 to ensure the effectiveness of the U.S. extended deterrence against North Korean nuclear and WMD threats.

Korean nuclear and missile threats.

First, the ROK and the United States established the concept and principles of the “Comprehensive Alliance Counter-missile Operation” at the 46<sup>th</sup> SCM on October 23, 2014. The purpose of this document is to strengthen the defense of the Korean Peninsula by utilizing the Alliance’s capabilities against North Korean missile threats. The term “comprehensive” refers to improving the response capabilities against North Korean missile threats in all areas of 4D (detect, defend, disrupt, and destroy).<sup>5</sup> The Alliance’s Comprehensive Counter-missile Operation is an operational-level response concept established in accordance with the strategic level Tailored Deterrence Strategy, and the Kill Chain and the KAMD system of the ROK military constitute important elements in executing this operation.

Second, the ROK military has established the Kill Chain, capable of immediate “Find, Fix, Target, and Engage,” to prepare effectively for North Korean missile threats. The Kill Chain is a series of attack systems that fixes the location of a target by finding missile threats in real time, targets with the means to effectively engage to destroy, and carries out the strike.

Chart 3-7. Kill Chain Layout



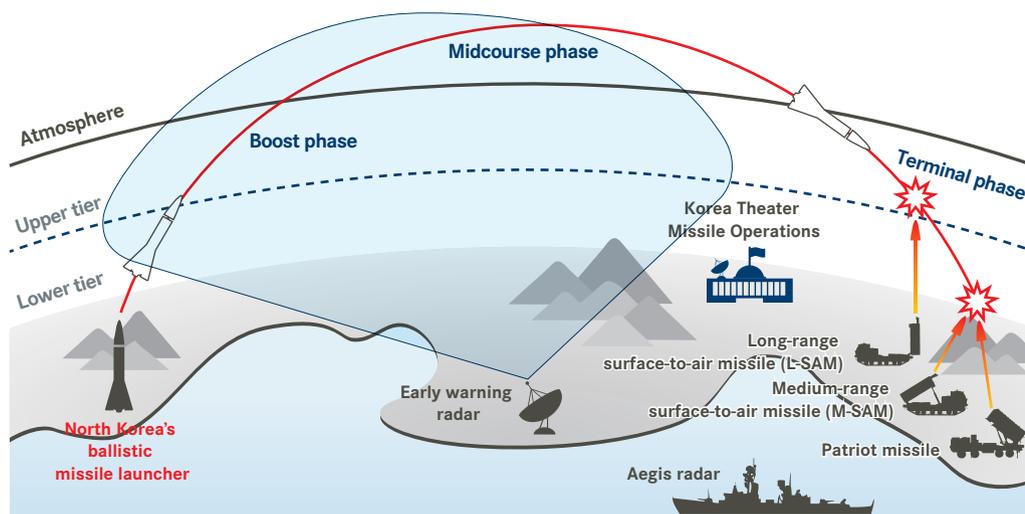
The ROK military is trying to strengthen its surveillance and reconnaissance capabilities and strike capability, which are the core functions of the Kill Chain. To enhance the surveillance and reconnaissance capabilities, the ROK military plans to introduce the Global Hawk, which is a high-altitude unmanned aerial vehicle for reconnaissance, and procure reconnaissance satellites as a mid- to long-term plan. In particular, the ROK military will

5 • Detect: Support for the efforts to defend, disrupt and destroy by managing information, surveillance and reconnaissance assets  
 • Defense: Active and passive defense to minimize the damage and disruption to friendly forces  
 • Disrupt: Kinetic and non-kinetic attacks against North Korea’s missile infrastructure  
 • Destroy: Attacks against transporter erector launchers (TELs) and support assets

gradually expand its military information and surveillance capabilities. It also plans to acquire the capability to promptly strike fixed and mobile facilities related to nuclear weapons and missiles throughout all domains of North Korea from the ground, sea and air. To achieve this, it will enhance the accuracy, range, and power of existing ground-to-ground missiles. By acquiring long-range air-to-surface missiles, medium-range air-to-surface missiles, Joint Direct Attack Munitions (JDAMs) and laser-guided bombs, fighters will be able to carry out long-distance precision strikes. Also, the ROK military will improve the performance of its submarine-to-surface and ship-to-surface missiles, and develop tactical ship-to-surface missiles to reinforce its sea-based strike capability.

Third, the ROK military develops the KAMD to intercept missiles heading towards the ROK territory. The KAMD system establishes a terminal-phase, lower tier overlapped missile defense system in consideration of the battlefield environment of the Korean Peninsula.

Chart 3-8. Conceptual Layout of the Korea Air and Missile Defense System



The KAMD consists of an early warning system, command and control system and intercept system. The early warning system detects the enemy’s launched missiles with ballistic missile early warning radar or Aegis radar, analyzes the detected information at the Korea Theater Missile Operations, and then delivers it to the optimal interceptor artillery battery. The battery that receives an order to intercept will track the missile with its own radar to execute the interception. The ROK military plans to continuously acquire improved Patriot missiles and medium-range surface-to-air missiles (M-SAM). Also, in order to expand the defense area against ballistic missiles, it will develop long-range surface-to-air

missiles (L-SAM) with an extended intercept range using domestic technology and deploy them by the mid-2020s.

The ROK military will continuously enhance the effectiveness and credibility of its missile response capabilities by identifying the development requirements of the Kill Chain and KAMD system, and by discussing options to reinforce interoperability with the U.S. missile defense system.

## **2. Development of Response Capability against Chemical and Biological Threats**

North Korea has reinforced its chemical and biological attack capabilities and increased the threat of attacks with various chemical and biological weapons using terrorism and diseases. Thus, it has become important for the ROK military to be prepared with chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear and high-yield explosive (CBRNE) response capability.

The ROK military has utilized ROK-U.S. combined information assets to monitor North Korea's facilities related to chemical and biological weapons and detect the signs of an attack at an early stage to incapacitate any attempts. It has organized CBRNE units at each level to maintain a prompt CBRNE operations support system. Also, it continues to secure defense equipment and material and medical supplies, including preventive and therapeutic agents.

The ROK military conducts realistic exercises every year to prepare effectively for threats from chemical and biological weapons, and also from naturally occurring threats such as influenza A H1N1. The ROK and U.S. Defense and Health Ministries have carried out "Able Response," an annual government-wide biological response exercise, since 2011, in which 200 personnel from over 40 related offices of both countries participate. In 2012, the ROK-U.S. Biological Defense Task Force was newly established to pursue cooperation issues arising from Able Response.

The military plans to establish the Comprehensive Development Plan for Chemical and Biological Threat Response Capability (tentative title) in the future to pursue a mid- to long-term project in which it will develop the capability to prepare for and respond to chemical and biological weapons, improve treatment and decontamination capability, and develop R&D capability. Through this, the ROK military aims to improve its preparedness against biochemical warfare and CBRNE terrorism to a higher level.

### 3. Development of Defense Space Power

Space is indivisible from our daily life in various areas. Its military significance keeps increasing in such areas as information gathering, satellite navigation and communications. Such importance has prompted many nations to focus their energy on space development at a national strategic level.

The MND announced the Base Plan for Defense Space Power Development in 2012. The plan is aimed at constructing a system to effectively respond to North Korean WMD threats, including nuclear weapons and missiles, and prepare for future warfare. Not only is the MND complementing domestic laws and regulations related to building defense space power, it is also building a management system by gradually acquiring space forces and training space experts.

In June 2014, the Space Development Promotion Act was amended in cooperation with the related government agencies. The Act was legislated in 2005 to establish a foundation to carry out national space development projects in a systematic and efficient manner. At the time of legislation, space security-related regulations were lacking in quality and quantity due to the existence of a strong notion that space was for development and utilization in favor of industry and science. The amendment in 2014 reinforced the provisions on space security by specifying the establishment procedures for the space development plan in connection with national security.

The MND constructs a cooperation system to contribute not only to national security, but also to domestic industrial development and world peace through defense space power development. Domestically, it reinforces civil-military cooperation to maximize the effects of convergence and cooperation. Internationally, the MND holds periodic cooperative council meetings with its U.S. counterpart to discuss various measures for space cooperation. In particular, in September 2014, by concluding the MOU on Space Situational Awareness (SSA)<sup>6</sup> Service and Information Sharing, the ROK and the United States agreed to partake in the efforts of the international community to guarantee the peaceful use and safety of space.

The MND will continue its efforts to expand the consensus on the importance of space security and the necessity to construct a defense space power. It will also develop defense space power through a phased approach, taking into consideration the development level of national space power, financial capability and the security environment.

---

<sup>6</sup> A concept of coping with collisions, crashes, and other dangers by ascertaining the situation of satellites, space wreckage, etc., that rotate in space around the Earth by using space surveillance systems, such as optical or radar systems that are installed on the ground or in space. With the competition in space development increasing among nations recently, the importance of cooperation between nations, such as space situational awareness information sharing, is being emphasized.

# Section 3 Establishing an Integrated Civilian-Government-Military-Police Defense Posture

On top of the military threat from North Korea, various security threats such as cyber-attacks, acts of terrorism, and so on are ever increasing. To respond effectively to these threats, it is important to establish an improved, full-spectrum total security posture by constructing a close inter-agency cooperation system, and integrate all national defense elements seamlessly. The military will continue to reinforce the integrated civilian-government-military-police defense posture and develop the current integrated defense concept into a full-spectrum total security concept in consideration of newly emerging threats such as terrorism, cyber-attacks, etc.

## 1. Management of Integrated Defense Organizations

The government manages integrated defense organizations such as the Central Integrated Defense Committee, Regional Integrated Defense Committee, Integrated Defense Headquarters, and Integrated Defense Support Headquarters to establish an integrated defense posture. The integrated defense command and support system are shown in Chart 3-9.

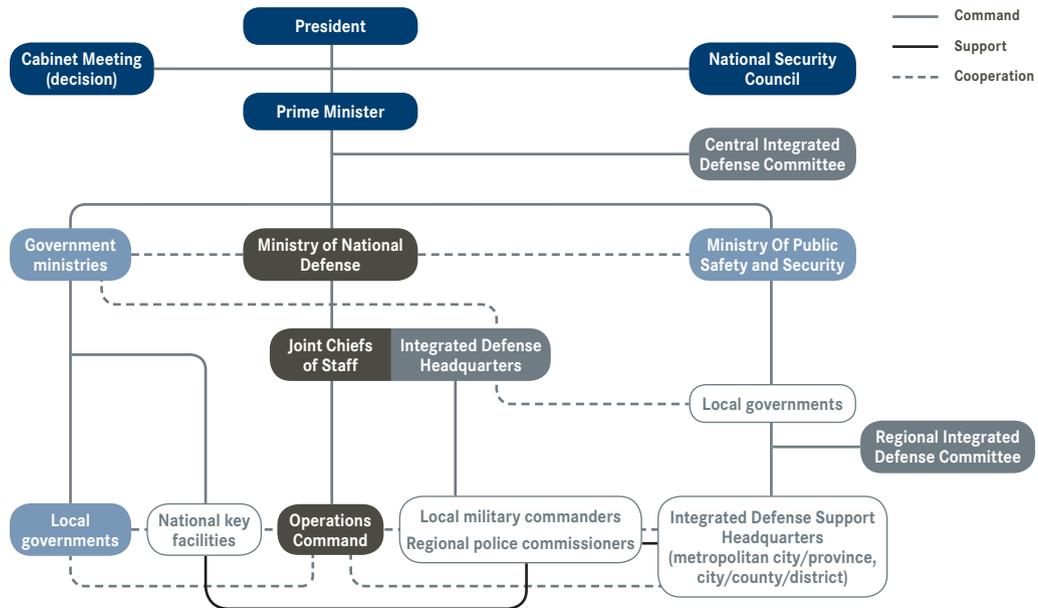
The Central Integrated Defense Committee is the highest decision-making organization pertaining to integrated defense. It was established under the Office of the Prime Minister. It deliberates and decides nation-level integrated defense policies, integrated defense operations and training guidance and the declaration or lifting of integrated defense conditions.<sup>1</sup> Regional Integrated Defense Committees are located in Seoul and 16 metropolitan cities and

<sup>1</sup> This is a situation in phases, declared in response to infiltration, provocation or threats from an enemy. It is distinguished into classes A, B and C, and a metropolitan city or province can only declare classes B and C.

- Class A situation: An emergency situation that occurs with the enemy's infiltration of a large-scale mass military force with a certain system of organization, or provocation with weapons of mass destruction. The integrated defense operation has to be performed under the command and control of the Director of the Integrated Defense Headquarters or a local military commander.
- Class B situation: Since it is difficult for public safety to recover in a short period of time because the enemy infiltration or provocation occurred in one or many areas, the integrated defense operation has to be performed under the command and control of a local military commander.
- Class C situation: A situation where the enemy infiltrated on a small scale, or the threat of enemy infiltration or provocation is expected, and public safety can recover in a short time by performing the integrated defense operation under the command and control of a regional police commissioner, local military commander, or fleet commander.

provinces, and in more than 230 cities, counties, and districts. As deliberative organizations under the head of local governments, these committees deliberate and decide on integrated defense response plans, the declaration or lifting of integrated defense situations, various support measures for integrated defense operations and training, and the designation or removal of vulnerable areas.

Chart 3-9. Integrated Defense Command and Cooperation System



The Integrated Defense Headquarters is a managing organization in charge of integrated defense operations, and its Director is the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff. It performs the functions of establishing and coordinating integrated defense policies; confirming and overseeing the integrated defense posture; conducting comprehensive analyses of the integrated defense operational status; establishing response measures and drafting integrated defense operation and training plans; and controlling and regulating the implementation of these plans.

The Integrated Defense Support Headquarters is located in each metropolitan city and province; city, county and district; and town (eup), township (myeon), and neighborhood (dong). Led by the head of the local government, it performs such duties as making ordinances and standard operating procedures for integrated defense, establishing and performing integrated defense operation and training support plans, installing and operating an integrated defense situation room, and fostering and supporting national defense elements

such as the military, police, reserve forces, local governments and civil defense units.

## 2. Development of an Integrated Defense Posture

The ROK government reinforces the integrated defense posture to respond effectively to the various security threats that have been increasing recently.

In 2013, a 24-hour integrated defense operation led by the police and performed during the Hwarang Training<sup>2</sup> was reflected in training guidelines. In the past, upon the declaration of an integrated defense situation, the military took the lead in carrying out the training activities. However, the operation time led by the police was increased to utilize the information capabilities, mobility, and scientific investigation skills of the police to prepare for various threats such as terrorism.

To smoothly execute civilian-government-military-police integrated defense operations, the government makes improvements to connectivity between the CCTV integrated control tower installed in each municipality and the integrated defense situation room of the municipality.

To improve the protection capability of major national facilities, a protection plan was developed, including the management of the protection forces for each facility.

In 2014, the need to redefine the concept of integrated defense was raised at the 47<sup>th</sup> Central Integrated Defense Committee. Since the concept of integrated defense was established in the 1960s with the main focus on penetration and provocation by North Korea, the council plans to improve it to the concept of full-spectrum total security to meet the new types of threats such as terrorism and cyber-attacks.



47<sup>th</sup> Central Integrated Defense Committee (February 2014)

<sup>2</sup> A comprehensive rear area exercise conducted biannually to establish an integrated civilian-government-military-police defense posture.

# Section 4 Assuring Combat Readiness through Realistic Training

---

The ROK military fosters talented personnel and training officers to become an elite group through various policies such as reinforcing the professionalism of soldiers and acquiring a tailored workforce. On top of reinforcing moral education for military personnel, the ROK military conducts scientific training to maximize the experience of battlefield situations, and reinforces realistic education and training by increasing combined exercises and training led by the ROK military.

---

## 1. Fostering Elite Officers and Professional Defense Personnel

**| Acquiring and Managing Outstanding Personnel |** Acquiring outstanding personnel in a stable manner is an essential element for the reconstruction of the troop structure centered on officers. Accordingly, the ROK military pursues the expansion of tailored personnel acquisition through university-military agreements, gradual expansion of the quota for long-term service junior officers and NCOs, and early achievement of the targeted percentage of female service members.

Based on agreements between the academic sector and the military, military studies and non-commissioned officer courses are established, and the ROK military expands the number of mid-term service officers and non-commissioned officers in the combat and technology fields. Military studies courses are currently installed in 16 universities, and are scheduled to be expanded to 20 universities by 2018. In the past, commissions and scholarships were guaranteed to all military studies majors, but starting in 2013 they have to be selected through competition with regular applicants in order to receive such benefits. Non-commissioned officer courses are now installed in 53 junior colleges and will be expanded centered on outstanding colleges that already offer non-commissioned officer courses. Starting in 2015, the RNTC (Reserve NCO's Training Corps) will be operated in six

colleges as a pilot program to diversify the means to acquire non-commissioned officers and improve the quality of non-commissioned officers.

By restructuring the number of officers, the ROK military will increase the long-term service selection percentage to reinforce the professionalism of military officers. By reducing the number of sergeants and first and second lieutenants, and increasing the number of first sergeants and captains and majors, the military will continue to adjust the selection so that 28% of commissioned officers and 47% of the non-commissioned officers will be selected as long-term servers by 2025, where 20% of commissioned officers and 25% of non-commissioned officers were selected in 2013.

To utilize more outstanding female personnel in the defense area, the ROK military expands the percentage of female soldiers. Initially, it planned to increase the percentage of female soldiers to 7% of all commissioned officers and 5% of all non-commissioned officers by 2020; however, this goal is expected to be attained earlier by 2015 for commissioned officers and 2017 for non-commissioned officers. In 2014, not only were all training courses opened to females by recruiting female cadets in the Korea Army Academy at Yeong-Cheon, but also the military chaplain branch and three army combat branches (artillery, armored, and air defense) were additionally opened to females to fully display their capabilities. Along with the female personnel expansion, the military implements and improves systems to protect maternity and support the balance between work and family in order to ensure a favorable work environment.

**| Fostering Professional Defense Personnel |** The MND fosters professional defense personnel to actively respond to changes in the ways of warfighting such as an accelerated operation of advanced weapon systems, cyber warfare and space war. The professional defense personnel are managed systematically, being divided into professional degree education and overseas military education.

Doctoral degree education is focused on training professors, research personnel, and special military technology personnel, and more than 30 candidates are selected annually. Meanwhile, master's degree education is focused on natural science, engineering, and military and security areas, and over 180 candidates are selected every year.

Overseas military education is conducted with the purpose of learning military knowledge from various nations and training regional professionals. Over 300 candidates are dispatched annually to education institutions such as command and staff colleges, military branch schools, and military academies in over 30 nations, including the United States, Japan, and the UK. Recently, in connection with the improvement of the status of the ROK military and expansion of the area of military diplomacy, those countries are diversified into the Middle East, South America, and Africa.

## 2. Improvement and Settlement in the Development and Refresher Training System

**| Optimizing the Goals, Contents and Methods of School Education |** Soldiers should be able to perform their duties immediately after acquiring the core combat techniques, and officers should cultivate combat command capability, education and training management capability, and character guidance capability.

The education contents were changed from a subject-oriented education to a project-based education based on tactical situations. The 22 subjects governed by the MND were minimized to two subjects of moral education and military security so that education will be done by focusing on the tactics and combat skills needed in the Army, Navy and Air Force.

The method of education is mostly focused on participation in and discussion of tactical situations with a view to improve creativity and tactical understanding on the part of the trainees.

**| Settlement of the Overall Evaluation System for Officer and Non-commissioned Officer Candidates |** The overall evaluation system for officer and non-commissioned officer candidates, which started in 2012, is a system that evaluates all commissioned and non-commissioned officer candidates in training courses in the Army, Navy and Air Force, and commissions only a select number of candidates who have fulfilled the qualification standards.

Overall evaluation is conducted focusing on the required combat skills, tactical command, and mental strength, and in order to raise the professionalism and transparency of the evaluation, a reservist professional evaluation group is operated. Since the comprehensive evaluation system for commissions started, educational participation and concentration levels have been improved, and the cadets' proactive self-study shows higher enthusiasm towards education training.

An exclusive tactical instructor system is used by the Army College at the Joint Forces Military University and nine branch schools of the Army. In this system, the instructor only teaches basic combat principles and leads discussions regarding battlefield situations, and then the students learn on their own through discussions among the student officers. As discussion-oriented education focused on tactics takes place, the student officers' comprehensive circumstantial judgment and problem-solving capabilities have been improved.

In the future, systems related to development and refresher training will continue to be improved to contribute to the reinforcement of the command capability of junior officers and NCOs.

### 3. Reinforcing Moral Education for Service Members

In order to “foster combat-oriented warriors” who strive for victory, the ROK military carries out moral education for service members focused on establishing proper values of state and security while having a will to fight with a ready-to-fight attitude and military spirit with the firm conviction of victory.

Accordingly, the military has integrated the dispersed moral education functions of the Army, Navy and Air Force to set up the Defense Institute for Spiritual Force in 2013. After the institute was founded, all the education and research functions relating to mental strength were integrated for consistent and systematic education. The ROK military reinforces the education by designating “military spirit” as the core education point in addition to the existing values of state and security education, and by installing a new education course on military spirit. This course promotes the cultivation of military spirit among lieutenant colonel and major level officers from field units through discussion on the military spirit role model and staff rides.

In 2013, the Textbook of Military Moral Education commonly used by all military personnel was improved. In particular, this textbook was formatted in a manner that instructors can more easily utilize during moral education by specifying a summary of the lectures and education focus in the beginning, and by organizing the questions many service members have into a Q&A format. The whole textbook has been modified to update the education contents for each area, including the value of state, value of security and military spirit. Additionally, by considering the viewpoint of a new generation of soldiers, the military has produced various reference materials using video, animation, etc. It also adopted for the first time in 2014 a presentation and discussion type of education where the service members voluntarily participate in moral education so that the service members can take in the proper values of state and security as their conviction. This is used and applied not only in the educational institutions but also in the field units.

### 4. Reinforcing Realistic Unit Training

**| Unit Training |** Unit training is carried out focusing on core subjects such as moral education, firing, physical training, and combat skills, thereby gaining complete proficiency over combat activities, and half of the available time each year is used for unit training focused on tactical training so that soldiers can perform in combat according to the commander’s intentions. Based on the perception that education for cadres is the focus of field unit training, the ROK military trains cadres equipped with character and leadership by

reinforcing military law and human rights education combined with proficiency in combat techniques and tactics. To maximize the effects of unit training, scientific training is conducted using state-of-the-art science and technology, such as the Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES),<sup>1</sup> data communications, satellites, etc.

The military puts efforts into the advancement of education and training evaluation. For this, the military has placed professional unit training evaluators in corps units to evaluate unit training in a more objective and professional manner.

By establishing practical interlocking unit management plans and weekly training schedules, unit management changes are minimized so that all unit members can foresee the training and prepare themselves.

The ROK military is integrating small-scale training sites that are scattered about so that the weapon systems being fielded in consideration of the operational environment can function optimally. It is also laying the groundwork for realistic training by preparing optimized training aids in a package format depending on the type of training.

The military is guaranteeing the conditions required for the military to become fully combat duty-oriented by regulating temporary transfers of troops at the battalion level or lower and including post-training maintenance activities as part of the training period thereby preventing the imposition of additional tasks during maintenance activities.

**| Major Training of the Army, Navy and Air Force |** The Army conducts realistic training to foster a strong army equipped with the “capability and posture of complete victory.”

The Army improves combat mission performance standards in phases by differentiating the goals of individual units after setting the direction of unit training, first by diagnosing the unit standard through evaluation. Unit training is carried out by focusing on scientific training, such as training using the MILES, the Battle Command Training Program (BCTP), and simulator training.

The training using the MILES is performed at the platoon to brigade level, and in various unit types such as infantry units, mechanized units, and special warfare units. For the regiment-level training performed by the Korea Combat Training Center, the training field will be expanded to 14 times the size of Yeouido (18 km×16 km) by 2016, and plans are underway to develop various kinds of weapon systems that support the brigade level, such as

---

<sup>1</sup> Combat training equipment that uses advanced optics technology, such as a laser launcher and detector.



Army joint air-ground training



Army scientific combat training



Closed zone close combat training of the JSA Security Battalion

artillery, mortars and helicopters, and warfare simulation equipment. When all these systems are integrated, the brigade-level units will go into the scientific combat unit for training in the latter part of 2016.

The training using the company-level MILES is equipped with a communication network using a mobile relay station, and it can improve combat strength by enabling after-action review (AAR) in various landforms, such as base camp and the vicinity, operation area, random area, etc. Four sets of the company-level MILES were supplied in 2014, and from 2015 to 2018, three sets will be supplied every year, and four sets will be supplied in 2019, making it 20 sets of the company-level MILES in operation by 2019.



Realistic training using the company-level MILES

The BCTP is a training program that uses computer simulation to enhance the combat command capability of the commanders and staff officers. Through training, the commanders and staff officers become proficient in unit commanding procedures at each level and integrated combat force management capability. Starting in 2014, the Army has conducted the BCTP in a simulated situation that highly resembles the battlefield by linking a war game simulation system with the C4I system. In the future, an integrated training system is planned to be established that links the computer simulation technique and actual maneuvering underground.

Simulator training is used for firing, control, and tactical simulation in virtual environments. It is currently provided for training in fostering education and unit training. Simulation-training centers will be built at the corps and division level in the future through which individual training and battlefield function training will be developed.

Along with these, to maximize the integrated combat capability in the battalion and below units, the Army reinforces cooperative training, and performing combined training, with the U.S. armed forces in CBRNE operations, counter-fire operations, air assault operations and counter-terrorism operations.

**The Navy** carries out realistic maritime training that takes into account the battlefield environment of the waters in the East, West and South Seas.

For the cooperative and joint training, the ground, naval and air forces participate to display integrated combat



East Sea combat ammunition live fire training

power, and such training can be divided into component training and maritime training. Component training is a basic training, and it is carried out based on the characteristics of the combat environment, such as anti-surface, anti-submarine, air defense, amphibious and maritime air operations. Maritime training is a specialized training, such as maneuver training, Northwest Islands defense training, Northern Limit Line local provocation joint response training, and maritime interdiction training. In the maritime training, cutting-edge surface combatants, submarines, amphibious ships, maritime patrol aircraft, and maritime operations and utility helicopters participate.

Combined training is divided into the ROK-U.S. combined training to strengthen the combined defense system, and multilateral combined training to increase military cooperation and humanitarian assistance. Among the various ROK-U.S. combined training there are maritime counter-SOF training, anti-submarine maritime search training, anti-submarine warfare training, amphibious operations training, mine warfare training, special warfare operations training, and submarine operations training. Multilateral combined training exercises include the Cobra Gold Exercise, Western Pacific Mine Counter Measure Exercise (WPMCMEX), Rim of the Pacific (RIMPAC) exercise, anti-ballistic missile training, and Search and Rescue Exercise (SAREX) with the surrounding countries, including Japan, China and Russia. The status of combined training during the recent two years is shown in Chart 3-10.

**Chart 3-10. Combined Training of the Navy during the Past Two Years**

Unit: Time(s)

Category	Total	Domestic			Overseas		
		Subtotal	ROK-U.S. combined	Multilateral training	Subtotal	ROK-U.S. combined	Multilateral training
2013	17	14	11	3	3	1	2
2014	18	14	11	3	4	-	4

Cruise training for naval academy midshipmen continues for 90-120 days by dividing the world into four area-based navigation routes, alternating each route every year. In 2013, the cruise training covered 14 nations, and 12 nations in 2014. Combined anti-air operations and



Navy and Marine Corps joint amphibious operation



RIMPAC exercise



Red Flag exercise

combined multilateral naval communication process exchanges with the navies and air forces of other nations are conducted to increase the mission-performing capabilities of the midshipmen along with military cooperation with visiting nations.

**The Air Force** maintains a strong, all-round readiness posture to promptly respond to all situations and threats, and strengthens realistic training to train elite warriors centered on combat missions. The major training includes defensive counter-air training, offensive counter-air training, air interdiction training, and close air support training.



FA-50 air-to-surface arms live fire training

Defensive counter-air training is carried out to stop the enemy's air infiltration forces from attempting to intrude in the air space, and as a part of this training the Air Force carries out massive track infiltration response training and joint air defense training. To improve the combined operational capabilities, combined air defense training is carried out by applying local air defense plans.

Offensive counter-air training is carried out to secure air superiority by operating offensive air power in enemy territory. Domestically, the Air Force performs the Max Thunder exercise, which is a combined large-scale air training exercise to improve the combined operation execution capability. Internationally, the Air Force participates in the Red Flag exercise and Pitch Black exercise, which are multilateral combined tactical training exercises. Also, it participates in the Cope North exercise and ASEAN Regional Forum Disaster Relief Exercise (ARF-DiREx) to improve its humanitarian assistance capabilities. The Air Force also performs aerial refueling training to achieve long-range overseas force projection and multi-mission capabilities. The status of combined training during the recent two years is shown in Chart 3-11.

**Chart 3-11. Combined Training of the Air Force during the Past Two Years**

Unit: Time(s)

Category	Total	Domestic			Overseas		
		Subtotal	ROK-U.S. combined	Multilateral training	Subtotal	ROK-U.S. combined	Multilateral training
2013	5	3	2	1	2	-	2
2014	5	3	2	1	2	-	2

Air interdiction training is carried out to disrupt, delay and destroy enemy support forces

before they are reinforced to the front area to threaten the friendly ground and naval forces. The ROK military periodically conducts combined and joint training focused on improving moving target detection and attack capabilities.

Close air support training is carried out to directly support the ground and naval forces. This training includes attack training using night vision goggles and training linked with the ground force scientific training field.

There are other types of training exercises the Air Force carries out such as counter-fire operations training to neutralize the long-range artillery of the enemy, and maritime infiltration interception training to guard against maritime infiltration by the enemy's special warfare forces. The Air Force also conducts scientific training utilizing simulators, GPS-Air Combat Maneuvering Instrumentation (GPS-ACMI) equipment, Electronic Warfare Training System (ETWS), etc.

**The Marine Corps** is a rapid reaction force that can fulfill its mission in times of contingency. The Marine Corps participates in joint training exercises led by the Joint Chiefs of Staff, such as the Hoguk Training, coastal counter infiltration training, and Northwest Islands augmentation and defense training. To be able to fulfill its mission in diverse operational environments, the Marine Corps participates in overseas combined training such as the Cobra Gold exercise and RIMPAC exercise. The status of training activities during the recent two years is shown in Chart 3-12. Also, in order to become proficient in the procedures for command and staff activities and improve operational performance capabilities, the Marine Corps conducts combat command training using computer simulation. By performing surprise landings, mountaineering, searches, and wintertime cold and snow training, the Marine Corps develops realistic combat capabilities.



High-intensity maritime infiltration training

Chart 3-12. Combined Training of the Marine Corps during the Past Two Years

Unit: Time(s)

Category	Total	Domestic			Overseas		
		Subtotal	ROK-U.S. combined	Multilateral training	Subtotal	ROK-U.S. combined	Multilateral training
2013	10	9	9	-	1	-	1
2014	14	10	9	1	4	1	3

**| Joint Exercise and Training |** Faced with a stern security reality, the ROK military focuses on reinforcing joint and combined operation capabilities. The Taegeuk Exercise is a theater-level command post exercise carried out every year under the command of the Joint Chiefs of Staff to increase the military's peacetime and wartime operational execution capability, and to meet the development requirements for joint forces and unit structure. After the transition of armistice operational control (OPCON) in 1994, the Joint Chiefs of Staff started the Taegeuk Exercise in 1995 to increase its independent operation execution capability. Since 1999, even operational command units (corps level) have participated in the Taegeuk Exercise, and now it has truly become a theater-level command post exercise led by the Joint Chiefs of Staff.

In the Taegeuk Exercise, the theater-level joint operations simulation model is utilized for realistic training. In 2013, the military constructed an operational execution system according to the enemy's threat levels, and starting in 2014, the exercise has been conducted with a focus on operational execution procedure proficiency against various threats, including local provocations.

The Hoguk Training is a theater- and operational command-level field training exercise carried out every year led by the Joint Chiefs of Staff to increase the operational execution capability of large-scale units. In 1988, the training, previously carried out separately by the Army, Navy and Air Force, was integrated as the "Tongil Training," and then the name was changed to "Hoguk Training" in 1996. To effectively prepare for enemy threats, the training was divided into training controlled by the Joint Chiefs of Staff and training delegated to the operations commands in 2014.



River crossing assault during the Hoguk Training

The Hwarang Training is a comprehensive training in the rear area under the command of the Integrated Defense Headquarters in which all national defense elements participate, such as the civilian sector, government, military and police. This training is carried out with a focus on becoming proficient in the procedures of the operational plans during wartime and peacetime and establishing an integrated civilian-government-military-police defense posture. The Hwarang Training is becoming realistic integrated defense training as it has been conducted in line with the schedule and situations of the Chungmu Training<sup>2</sup> since

<sup>2</sup> A comprehensive exercise performed by integrated civilian, government, and military personnel under the responsibility of the head of a local city or provincial government to establish the local security posture.

2013.

In the future, the ROK military will continue to improve its joint exercise and training execution measures in order to cultivate an independent theater operation execution capability and to acquire a reflexive response capability based on periodic and repeated training.

**| Combined Exercise and Training |** The Key Resolve (KR) exercise and Foal Eagle (FE) training are a ROK-U.S. combined theater-level command post exercise (CPX)<sup>3</sup> and a field training exercise (FTX) conducted during the first half of every year.

The Key Resolve exercise focuses on examining the combined defense posture and improving the proficiency of warfighting procedures. In 2013, the ROK military improved its capability to lead theater-level combined exercises as the ROK Joint Chiefs of Staff assumed the leading role to carry out exercise planning, control, and after-action review (AAR).



Key Resolve (KR) exercise

The Foal Eagle training is a field training exercise focused on enhancing ROK-U.S. combined operations and rear area protection capabilities. Since 2008, it has been carried out in an integrated manner with the Key Resolve exercise. In 2014, it was held with multinational combined forces for the first time as Australian forces participated with a company-level unit.

The Ulchi Freedom Guardian (UFG) exercise is a ROK-U.S. theater-level command post exercise conducted during the second half of every year. Through this exercise, the ROK military improves its independent response capability and the ROK-U.S. combined response capabilities against local provocations by North Korea, and reinforces the ROK-U.S. combined warfighting capabilities against an aggression. Starting from 2013, in particular, the administrative bodies of cities, counties, districts and above participate in the crisis management portion of the exercise, which improves the overall outcome of the exercise.

According to the conditions-based wartime operation control (OPCON) transition plan, the ROK and the United States will explore options to developed future-oriented combined exercises.

---

<sup>3</sup> This is an exercise for the commanders and staff organization in each unit to practice the mission execution of their respective units. Through this exercise, they become proficient in mobilizing and operating the commanding post, applying the procedures for command and staff activities, and applying the relevant operation plans and operating procedures while maintaining communications in various situations.

In order to conduct theater-level combined and joint exercises led by the ROK military, the Joint Chiefs of Staff completed the Joint Warfighting Simulation Center (JWSC) in 2014, established a joint exercise and training system, and is in the process of developing a war game model. In particular, the JWSC carries out the role of a control tower for exercise control and simulation control, as its main role is to support combined and joint exercises. By connecting the Battle Simulation Centers (BSCs), one located on the U.S. continent and the other on the Korean Peninsula, through an exclusive war game network, the JWSC supports not only combined and joint exercises, but also other war games conducted between the ROK Army, Navy and Air Force and U.S. forces as well as academic institutions.

# Chapter 4

## Strengthening Future-Oriented Self-Defense Capability



Section 1 Refinement and Development of Defense Reform	82
Section 2 Force Buildup based on Jointness	91
Section 3 Shaping Elite Reserve Forces and Enhancing War Sustainment Capability	95
Section 4 Development of Defense Informatization	107



Maneuvering exercise of the Navy's Aegis destroyer

# Section 1 Refinement and Development of Defense Reform

---

The Ministry of National Defense (MND) has established the Defense Reform Basic Plan (2014-2030), which reflects changes in the domestic and foreign security situations and national defense environments to foster an “advanced elite military.” Defense reform is pushed forward with the primary goal of securing the capability to respond against North Korean threats in the short- to mid-term, and reinforcing the defense capability against potential threats while preparing for the era of unification in the long term. Military structure reform will transform the structure into one that is capable of executing offensive integrated operations in an informationized high-tech network-centric environment suitable for future warfare. Defense management reform will also be proceeded to establish a highly efficient advanced defense management system.

---

## 1. Progress of Defense Reform

In December 2005, the MND established the Defense Reform Basic Plan (2006-2020) to transform the “manpower-oriented quantitative military structure” into an “information- and knowledge-oriented qualitative military structure.”

Since then, the MND has modified and amended the basic plan in two- to three-year cycles in accordance with the analysis and assessment results on the domestic and foreign security situations and the progress of defense reform based on the National Defense Reform Act.

In June 2009, the MND established the Defense Reform Basic Plan (2009-2020), which reflects the response system against military threats including North Korea’s long-range missile launches and its second nuclear test, and other potential non-military threats.

In August 2012, the Defense Reform Basic Plan (2012-2030) was established to



Defense Reform Basic Plan  
(2014-2030) e-book

additionally reflect the changes in the domestic and foreign security environment and various military threats from North Korea such as the attack against the ROK Ship *Cheonan* and shelling of Yeonpyeong Island. In this plan, the target year for defense reform was modified from 2020 to 2030, considering the development of defense science technology and changes in the defense environment, such as existing and future threats.

After 2013, the necessity to prepare a deterrent force to respond against North Korea's provocation threats and asymmetric force buildup was raised. Also, the need to transform into a structure which not only allows a timely and proactive response under the changing warfighting paradigm but also reduces the response time in detecting, deciding, and striking through network development was brought up. Also, defense reform needed to be modified since a low birthrate and rapid aging of society limit the sustainment of the quantitative military structure, and the increase in public welfare requirements hinder the stable securing of the defense budget.

Against this backdrop, in March 2014, the Defense Reform Basic Plan (2014-2030) was established, reflecting the security situation changes while maintaining the basic principles of the Defense Reform Basic Plan (2012-2030) to secure the motivational drive for defense reform. The military structure will transform into an elite force structure which has the proper capability to simultaneously respond against North Korean asymmetric threats, local provocations and aggression threats, and with a larger number of officers and NCOs to prepare for the reduction of military resources. In the defense management area, an advanced defense management system with high efficiency will be established by improving combat power through realistic education and training and effective personnel management, and through innovative logistics management by improving the mobilization system, shaping elite reserve forces, and improving the logistics system. The major achievements of defense reform from 2013 to 2014 are shown in Chart 4-1.

**Chart 4-1. Major Achievements of Defense Reform (2013-2014)**

Areas	Major Achievements
Military Structure Reform	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reform of the Joint Chiefs of Staff and the headquarters of the Army, Navy and Air Force, reinforcement of their functions and organizations, and consolidation of similar functions and organizations</li> <li>• Development of the military strategy basic concept (active deterrence → proactive deterrence)</li> <li>• Adjustment of force buildup priority (preparing against local provocation threats as a top priority → preparing against local provocation and aggression threats simultaneously)</li> <li>• Reinforcement of response forces against asymmetric threats and local provocations from North Korea</li> <li>• Standing troops reduced by 51,000, and the ratio of officers and NCOs increased by 5.1% (2006-2014)</li> </ul>

Defense Management Reform	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Establishment of training sites for realistic training conditions, such as the 5<sup>th</sup> Corps regionalized training site and 2<sup>nd</sup> Fleet comprehensive maritime training site</li> <li>• Expansion of university-military agreements, including military science courses (six schools), NCO courses (four schools), and RNTC (Reserve NCO's Training Corps) (six schools)</li> <li>• Expansion of female personnel by increasing branches opened to female service members, and recruiting female cadets in the Korea Army Academy at Yeong-Cheon</li> <li>• Installation of mobilization support groups (3) in the Marine Corps and the 51<sup>st</sup> and 52<sup>nd</sup> Homeland Divisions and mobilization supplement battalions (32)</li> <li>• Pilot operation of enhanced military logistics system and establishment of defense logistics field automation system</li> <li>• Operating 18 organizations, such as the Joint Interoperability Technology Center, as military executive agencies</li> <li>• Replacement of military vehicles with commercial vehicles</li> <li>• Establishment of the Integrated Civilian-Government-Military Committee to improve the military medical system</li> <li>• Adjustment of functions and organizations between the Ministry of National Defense and Defense Acquisition Program Administration through the amendment of the Defense Acquisition Program Act</li> <li>• Establishment of a preventive system with a focus on respect for lives</li> <li>• Fostering disease prevention-oriented barracks environment, such as soldier health promotion projects</li> </ul>
---------------------------	---

## 2. Direction of Military Structure Reform

The goal of military structure reform is to transform the existing structure into a structure that is capable of executing integrated offensive operations in an informationized and high-tech network-centric environment suitable for future warfare.

**| Command Structure |** The command structure will be reorganized focusing on strengthening the joint and combined operations command and execution capabilities of the ROK military, considering the future operational environment on the Korean Peninsula and jointness. The reorganization will be carried out by distinguishing the operational command organization and military command (other than the operational command) assistance organization to establish a theater operations command and execution system with the Joint Chiefs of Staff at the center. The changes in the organization of the Joint Chiefs of Staff are shown in Chart 4-2.

**Chart 4-2. Organization (Plan) of the Joint Chiefs of Staff**

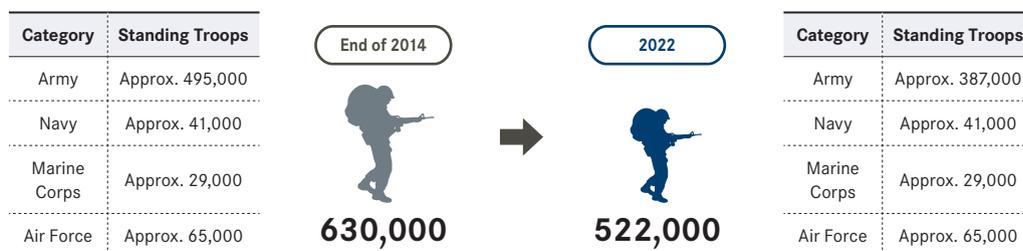


To develop the Joint Chiefs of Staff into a structure that is prepared against future enemy threats and suited for the operational environment, the command organizations will be optimized by reinforcing the ROK-U.S. combined information analysis function and considering the reduction of standing troops. The timing of the reorganization will be decided in conjunction with the progress of the conditions-based wartime operational control (OPCON) transition.

**| Troop Structure |** For the troop structure, the capability to simultaneously respond against North Korea's asymmetric forces, local provocations and aggression threats will be primarily ensured, and the size of the standing troops will be reduced to 522,000 by 2022. The size of the standing troops will gradually be reduced in a practical manner considering the fielding date of the advanced weapon systems.

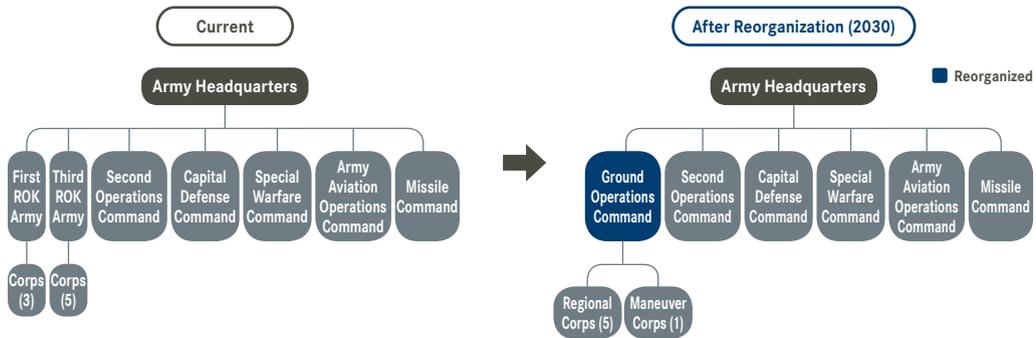
By increasing the ratio of officers and NCOs, an elite troop structure will be established. The target ratio of officers and NCOs in the Army, Navy, and Air Force by 2025 is at least 40%. To meet the requirements of future wars, the Army will be reduced to 387,000 to make an elite military with an information- and technology-oriented qualitative advanced structure, and the Navy, Marine Corps, and Air Force will be restructured within the existing size of troops. The plan for standing troop reduction is shown in Chart 4-3.

**Chart 4-3. Standing Troops Reduction Plan**



**| Unit Structure |** The Army will be transformed into a unit structure capable of executing integrated offensive operations in a network-centric operational environment. The units will be reorganized to develop a structure that is suitable for the operational environment of the Korean Peninsula, considering the military threats of North Korea and the operations execution capability of the ROK military. The key changes in the Army's unit structure are shown in Chart 4-4.

Chart 4-4. Army Unit Structure Reorganization Plan



The Army will establish the Ground Operations Command by combining the First ROK Army (FROKA) and Third ROK Army (TROKA). The Ground Operations Command will command ground operations units at the corps level by mainly organizing operations command functions such as intelligence, operations, and communications. A ground intelligence group, intelligence communications group, and service support group will be task-organized to support ground operations, and the mountain brigade will be organized to rapidly maneuver in the eastern mountainous area to destroy the enemy.

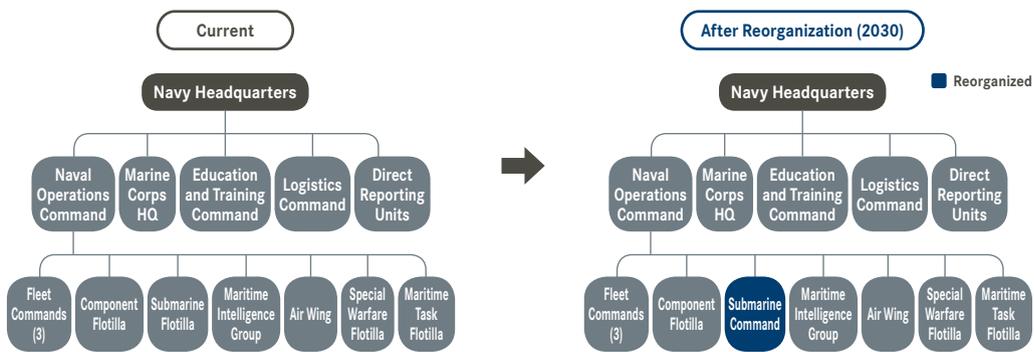
The regional corps, as the highest tactical echelon of ground operations, defends the forward area of responsibility at each axis, and will be reinforced to be operated as the main unit in offensive operations. In order to enhance counter-fire operations capabilities, the Air Force's Air Support Operations Centers (ASOCs) and aviation groups, air defense artillery groups, and logistics support brigade will be organized for each corps to reinforce combat support capability. Such tailored reorganization will be done in consideration of the eastern and western operational environments.

The maneuver corps will be employed as the main echelon in multi-dimensional, high-speed maneuver warfare as the strategic and operational reserve unit. In considering the geographical features of the Korean Peninsula, its reorganization will center on mechanized infantry divisions in order to rapidly respond to operational environment changes.

According to such a reorganization plan, a corps-oriented operations execution system with the concept of a mini field army will be established. In particular, by primarily reinforcing the frontline units, combat execution capability will be significantly enhanced.

The Navy will not only prepare against the existing threats by securing the integrated operating capability for the multi-dimensional forces of surface, underwater, and aviation, but will also be developed into a structure capable of protecting full-spectrum national interests such as the protection of sea lines of communications and maritime resources. The key changes in the Navy's unit structure are shown in Chart 4-5.

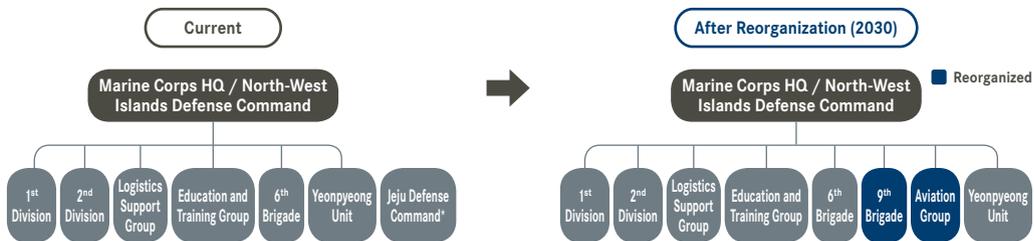
**Chart 4-5. Navy Unit Structure Reorganization Plan**



The Navy plans to expand its submarine flotilla into the Submarine Command, and will reorganize the special warfare flotilla. The number of small surface combatants will be reduced, but middle- and heavy-class ships such as next-generation destroyers, frigates, and Aegis destroyers will be reinforced to develop a maritime task force.

The Marine Corps will be developed into the structure as a marine-air-ground task force capable of conducting various types of missions such as the defense of strategic islands and multi-dimensional, high-speed amphibious operations. The key changes in the Marine Corps unit structure are shown in Chart 4-6.

**Chart 4-6. Marine Corps Unit Structure Reorganization Plan**



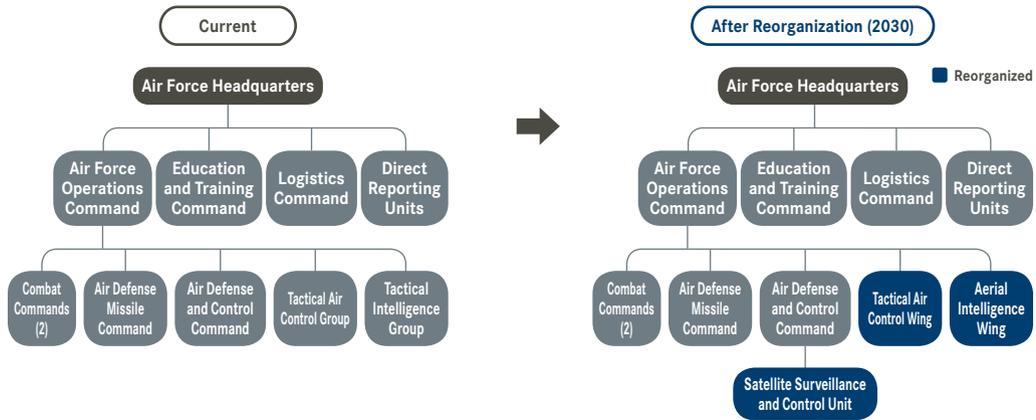
\* Jeju Defense Command: Under the Navy

The Marine Corps will establish the 9<sup>th</sup> Marine Brigade (Jeju Unit) to conduct integrated defense operations on Jeju Island. Marine divisions will be reorganized and the Marine Aviation Group will be established. By establishing the aviation group, which could be employed as an air maneuver and attack unit, the Marine Corps will ensure the condition to conduct various types of missions.

The Air Force will develop its structure to conduct effects-based offensive air and space operations and maximize jointness. The key changes in the Air Force's unit structure are

shown in Chart 4-7.

Chart 4-7. Air Force Unit Structure Reorganization Plan



The Air Force will establish a Tactical Air Control Wing with the Tactical Air Control Group as its predecessor, and create the Aerial Intelligence Wing with the Tactical Intelligence Group as its predecessor to reinforce air reconnaissance and intelligence support capabilities. A Satellite Surveillance and Control Unit will also be installed to conduct the mission of satellite surveillance over the Korean Peninsula.

**| Force Structure |** The force structure will be reorganized focusing on securing the capability to respond effectively and appropriately against existing and potential threats. In order to monitor the Korean Peninsula and the surrounding region, and to visualize battlefields for each echelon, the surveillance and reconnaissance forces will be reinforced. Command and control systems, including the combined C4I system, will be fielded to share battlefield situational awareness in a real-time manner and support command decisions.

The ground forces will be equipped with maneuver and strike capabilities to conduct offensive maneuver warfare. The naval forces will secure the capabilities to control the surrounding seas and execute multi-dimensional, high-speed amphibious operations. The air forces will acquire the long-range precision strike capability to quickly establish air superiority and strike strategic targets in the deep area. In particular, detection, identification, determination and strike capabilities, such as the Kill Chain and Korea Air and Missile Defense (KAMD) system, will be developed to respond against North Korean nuclear and ballistic missile threats.

### 3. Direction of Defense Management Reform

In order to improve education and training, a comprehensive scientific training site will be established to make live-fire and maneuvering possible in diverse combat situations. As for the personnel management system, university-military agreements will be expanded to satisfy the military's demand for outstanding personnel with tailored talent. Additionally, the quota structure will be improved by increasing the selection rate for long-term service junior officers and NCOs.

To improve the mobilization system, a regionalized resource management system will be established for the mobilized reserve forces, and the related statutes will be modified to immediately mobilize the required forces in times of contingency. To shape strong, elite reserve forces, a part-time service system for officer reservists will be established in phases by 2020, and the establishment of a reserve force management agency by 2023 will be actively reviewed to efficiently manage the reserve forces. For the reserve force training sites, 208 battalion-level training sites will be integrated into 44 brigade-level training sites by 2024 to establish a realistic training system using a scientific training system.

To innovate logistics management, the current multi-level military logistics system will be simplified into a one-stop concept logistics support system by 2016. The military executive agency system will be expanded, and the use of civilian resources in combat service support functions, such as replacing non-combat military vehicles with commercial vehicles in a phased manner, will also be expanded.

The transparency, professionalism, and efficiency of the defense force improvement projects will be enhanced, and all phases of weapon system requirement proposal, acquisition, and maintenance will be managed in an integrated manner. In particular, the scientific analytical capability for proposed requirements will be enhanced. Also, the Agency for Defense Development (ADD) will be developed into a global research institution for future core technology development.

Cyber warfare response capability will be reinforced by establishing a comprehensive development plan and improving the related laws and systems.

The level of welfare for military personnel will be enhanced to allow our service members to focus solely on combat missions. An optimum reward system for career service members will be established, and by 2017, it is planned to raise soldiers' salaries to double that of 2012. To foster an advanced barracks culture, military community centers and indoor gyms will be built, and the number of professional counselors for soldiers will be expanded to be employed at the regiment level. Also, social compensation, such as acknowledging military service experience as school credits, will be increased. To improve the military's medical support system, a barracks environment oriented to disease prevention will be developed, and the

military hospitals' functions will be rearranged to seek professionalism and specialization. There is also a plan to build the Armed Forces Trauma Center to treat serious cases of gunshot wounds, burns, multiple fractures, etc.

Also, considering the distinct characteristics of military service, customized high-quality childcare services will be provided, welfare services for military families will be reinforced, and a legal and systematic foundation to support motherhood protection for female service members will be established.

## Section 2 Force Buildup based on Jointness

---

To establish a robust security posture and reinforce the self-defense capability against the steadily increasing threats of North Korea and the rapidly changing environment of Northeast Asia, the key forces that can respond against North Korea and potential threats will be acquired in good time. To this end, the ROK military has established and promotes a force buildup plan to realize a joint military strategy and joint operations concept based on the assessment of strategic environments on the Korean Peninsula and the analysis of existing and potential threats.

---

### 1. Basic Direction of Force Buildup

The MND strengthens the military force in each category to effectively and appropriately prepare against North Korea and other potential threats while primarily acquiring the force to prepare against North Korean threats.

In terms of battlefield awareness, the MND will reinforce strategic surveillance and reconnaissance capabilities for the Korean Peninsula and its vicinity, and improve the battlefield visualization capability at each echelon. In order to achieve this goal, the MND will gradually acquire various types of manned and unmanned reconnaissance aircraft and multipurpose satellites.

In command and control, the capabilities to share battlefield situations in real time and support command decisions will be acquired. The interoperability of the command and control systems in each field and echelon will be improved, and the survivability and protection capability from kinetic and cyber attacks will also be enhanced.

The ground forces will acquire maneuver and strike capabilities to conduct offensive maneuver warfare. As the operational area of responsibility of each unit expands, maneuver, fire, protection and precision strike capabilities will be improved, and an automated combat system will be acquired. K-2 tanks, K-9 self-propelled guns, next-generation multiple launch rocket system (MLRS), Korea Utility Helicopter (KUH), and missiles capable of striking the entire area of North Korea will also be continuously acquired.

The naval forces will acquire maritime control capability for the surrounding area and the

capability of executing multi-dimensional, high-speed amphibious operations. With the continued increase in challenges against the ROK's sea sovereignty and interests, the ROK Navy will acquire the surface, underwater, and aviation forces to effectively address these challenges. Aegis destroyers, next-generation destroyers, and next-generation submarines will be fielded, and in conjunction with these acquisitions, the Submarine Command will be established. Also, the Maritime Task Flotilla will be reorganized over the long term. The amphibious forces will additionally integrate large transport ships and amphibious helicopters, and a marine brigade will be established for the integrated defense of Jeju Island. Also, the Marine Aviation Group will be established.

The air forces will secure air superiority for the defense of the Korean Peninsula and acquire long-range precision strike capability against strategic targets. By acquiring the FA-50, next-generation fighter (F-X), and Korea fighter (KF-X) in phases, the ROK Air Force will improve its independent air operations execution capability. Aerial refueling tankers, precision-guided weapons, and space-based surveillance power will also be acquired to improve long-range air operations and all-weather strike capability.

The protection forces will improve the defense capability against aircraft and ballistic missiles as well as the protection capability against chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear and high-yield explosive (CBRNE) attacks. To establish the Korea Air and Missile Defense (KAMD) system, ballistic missile defense forces, such as medium- and long-range air defense guided weapons, will be continuously acquired. To reduce casualties and facility damage and to ensure survivability in the case of North Korea's nuclear and weapons of mass destruction attacks, protection capability will be enhanced and follow-up management capability will be improved in phases.

## **2. Major Achievement**

**| 2013 Force Buildup Projects |** The defense budget for 2013 was 34 trillion, 497 billion won, and the force improvement budget was 10 trillion, 174.9 billion won, which is an increase of 2.8% from 2012. Among the major projects promoted in 2013, 31 were new. The major force buildup projects are shown in Chart 4-8.

**| 2014 Force Buildup Projects |** The defense budget for 2014 was 35 trillion, 705.6 billion won, and 10 trillion, 509.6 billion won of this was the force improvement budget, which increased 3.3% from 2013. Among the major projects promoted in 2014, 33 were new. The major force buildup projects are shown in Chart 4-9.

Chart 4-8. Major Force Buildup Projects of 2013

Weapon Systems	Ongoing Projects	New Projects
Surveillance, Reconnaissance / Command and Control, Communications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High-altitude unmanned surveillance aerial vehicle (HUAV)</li> <li>Satellite all-military air defense warning system</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Performance upgrade of reconnaissance UAVs for corps</li> <li>Portable satellite / air-to-ground communication radio</li> </ul>
Maneuver / Fire	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>K-2 tank</li> <li>K-10 ammunition supply vehicle</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remote fire control system</li> <li>K-56 ammunition supply vehicle</li> </ul>
Vessel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next-generation amphibious ship</li> <li>Jangbogo II-class submarine</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auxiliary training ship</li> <li>Amphibious helicopter</li> </ul>
Aircraft	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Intermediate-range GPS-guided bomb</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tactical Air Control Wing</li> <li>Laser-guided bomb, 2<sup>nd</sup></li> </ul>

Chart 4-9. Major Force Buildup Projects of 2014

Weapon Systems	Ongoing Projects	New Projects
Surveillance, Reconnaissance / Command and Control, Communications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High-altitude unmanned surveillance aerial vehicle (HUAV)</li> <li>Next-generation thermal observation device (TOD-III)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mobile sea surveillance radar</li> <li>Air traffic control radar</li> </ul>
Maneuver / Fire	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>K-2 tank</li> <li>Counter-fire radar</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next-generation MLRS</li> <li>Remote controlled munitions</li> </ul>
Vessel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PKX-B (batch-1)</li> <li>Jangbogo III-class submarine (batch-1)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Amphibious ship transport helicopter</li> <li>Gwanggaeto the Great III, 2<sup>nd</sup>*</li> </ul>
Aircraft	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next-generation fighter (F-X)</li> <li>FA-50 fighter</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aerial refueling tanker*</li> <li>Patriot missile*</li> <li>Korea fighter (KF-X)</li> </ul>

\* Planned to be started in 2015 according to project conditions

### 3. 2015-2019 Mid-term Force Buildup Plan

The MND has established a force buildup plan for the next five years, starting from 2015, to maximize jointness and accommodate changes in the security environment, such as the recent increase of North Korean threats.

First, the key forces will be reinforced to prepare against North Korea's asymmetric forces and aggression threats. In order to accomplish this, the Kill Chain and Korea Air and Missile Defense (KAMD) will be established in good time by acquiring long-range air-to-ground guided missiles and long-range ground-to-air guided weapons. The capability to prepare against asymmetric threats and to respond against North Korea's aggression will be continuously reinforced by acquiring counter-fire radar, aircraft GPS disruption prevention systems, etc.

Second, to prevent a vacuum due to force reduction following defense reform, the vital forces in unit reorganization will be secured in good time. To overcome the expansion of areas of operations and inferiority in the number of forces, military forces will be reinforced

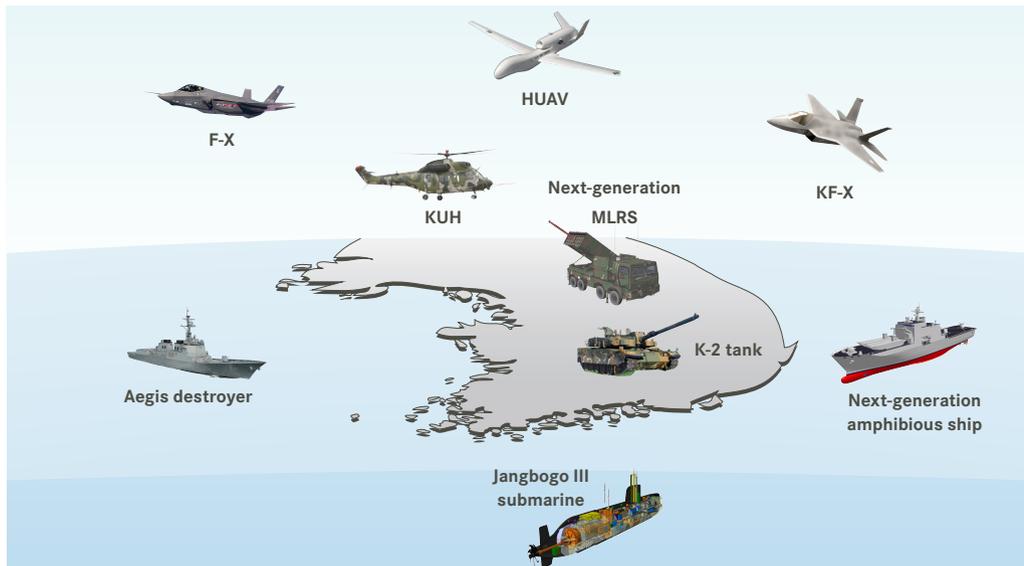
by focusing on surveillance, reconnaissance, maneuver, and precision strike capabilities by acquiring battalion-level reconnaissance UAVs, upgraded 105 mm howitzer and multi-function observation devices, and improving the day-and-night close combat capabilities of field units at the battalion level and below.

Third, the key capabilities to reinforce self-defense capacity will be acquired. In order to accomplish this, a networked command, control, and communication system will be established through a next-generation military satellite communication system, and rapid maneuver and strike capabilities will be acquired by operating large attack helicopters. The maritime control and amphibious operations capability will be reinforced with next-generation amphibious ships, and air superiority and long-range operations capability will be realized with aerial refueling tankers.

For this aim, a total of 322 defense force improvement projects will be carried out from 2015 to 2019. Among these, 103 will be new projects.

The ROK military will design a mid- to long-term road map to acquire military forces that “can see earlier and farther, and make decisions to strike faster” by considering the various future threats, battlefield environment changes, and science technology development trends.

**Chart 4-10. Major Projects to Secure Advanced Forces**



Promotional video for the Surion helicopter



Introductory video for the submarine “Kim Jwa-jin”

## Section 3 Shaping Elite Reserve Forces and Enhancing War Sustainment Capability

---

The reserve forces are the key forces for deterring war during peacetime and for winning wars in contingencies. As such, in order to strengthen the reserve forces to the level of standing forces, the military focuses its energy on improving the efficiency of mobilization of troops and supplies, modernizing combat equipment and materials, and modifying the training methods and conditions of the reservists. The MND also innovatively improves the procurement, maintenance support, and logistics systems; integrates and utilizes the available resources of the private sector, government, and military, both domestic and foreign; and expands international logistics cooperation to enhance war sustainment capability.

---

### 1. Shaping Elite Reserve Forces

**| Enhancing Efficiency of the Mobilization System of Troops and Materials |** Since 2013, the MND has been experimenting with an expansion plan for the management and assignment of troop mobilization resources from managing by postal address to managing by region.<sup>1</sup> When mobilization resources are managed by region, there is an advantage of improving combat strength because appropriate specialties are assigned to fulfill mobilization requirements, while mobilization assignment unit changes are minimized.

To assess the mobilization requirements for materials responsibly, mobilization requirement deliberation committees have been formed and are operated at each echelon. By collaborating with related departments such as the National Tax Service and the Ministry of Public Safety and Security, plans to check the changes of companies for mobilization in real time and giving incentives to companies in participating in government procurement bidding are being pursued.

To enhance the efficiency of reserve force resource management and training as well as the troops and materials mobilization system, a defense mobilization information system<sup>2</sup> has been established in phases since 2006. Phase 1, which is the management of reservists, and

---

<sup>1</sup> Dividing the troop mobilization assignment areas into Region 1 (Seoul, Incheon, Gyeonggi-do, and Gangwon-do) and Region 2 (south of Chungcheong-do).

<sup>2</sup> An information system performing the automated functions of prompt, precise mobilization plans, resource management, mobilization execution, and other work processes for mobilization resources from the MND to subordinate units.

phase 2, which is the personnel mobilization, have been completed along with phase 3, which is the materials mobilization. Phase 4 is the development of a “mobilization capability analysis model,” and it is expected to be completed in 2016.

Mobilization supplement battalions with troops, equipment and supplies have been organized. If large-scale losses occur in the forward divisions and corps during wartime, mobilization supplement battalions complete with troops, equipment, supplies, and ammunition will be deployed to immediately supplement for the losses. By 2016, 168 mobilization supplement battalions will be established in the rear area to be deployed to the forward area during contingencies.

To command and control the mobilization of troops and materials, the MND considers establishing a mobilization executive agency directly under the MND after 2018. The agency will provide integrated management and verification of mobilization requirements during peacetime, and will coordinate and control to smoothly mobilize various personnel and materials in wartime.

The MND pursues the amendment of the United Defense Act to respond in a timely way against North Korean threats that are difficult to predict, such as the shelling of Yeonpyeongdo Island, and to prevent the escalation of war. Such an amendment will make partial mobilization orders possible even during an integrated defense situation.

Legal and institutional mechanisms will be prepared for the troops and materials mobilization system to immediately perform its missions, and there will be active cooperation with the related agencies to use the necessary resources at the time needed.

### **| Reservists Organization and Resource Management |**

Reservists are classified into either the mobilized reserve force or the homeland defense reserve force depending on their mission. The mobilized reservists are mainly composed of reservists who are in their first to fourth year after being discharged from their active service. They are mobilized as supplemental personnel for the extension



Reserve force training



Public advertisement for  
the reserve forces

and establishment of active service units or mobilized in the case of troop losses to conduct operational missions. The homeland defense reservists are composed of reservists in their fifth to eighth year after being discharged, and they conduct homeland defense operations in designated areas or workplaces.

In accordance with the Military Personnel Management Act, retired officers, warrant officers, and non-commissioned officers are obligated to be part of the reservists until they reach the full retirement age for their respective ranks. For enlisted service members, they are part of the reservists for eight years after they are discharged. ROK citizens over the age of 18 and under age 60 who are not incorporated into the reserve forces can apply to become homeland defense reservists. As of September 2014, approximately 6,300 female reservists and 1,200 special warfare reservists are serving as members of the homeland defense reserve force.

The number of reservists is 2,970,000 as of September 2014, and the reservists are organized into local reserve units in town (eup), township (myeon) and neighborhood (dong), and workplace reserve units.

The MND will efficiently manage the reservists as an axis of national total war along with the standing force by maintaining the appropriate number of reservists and differentiating training and management methods for reservists according to the number of years after their active service.

**| Enhancement of Execution Capability of Homeland Defense Operations |** Old personal firearms and crew-served weapons owned by the homeland defense reservists are replaced with new models. By 2016, the Carbine rifles that still exist in some units will be entirely replaced with M16A1 rifles, and the gas masks and bulletproof helmets necessary for individual protection will be acquired 100% by 2017.

By 2020, communications equipment will have been improved with new models to make it possible to execute integrated civilian-government-military-police operations, enhancing the homeland defense operation capabilities of the homeland defense reserve forces.

For units with a low organization rate in peacetime to smoothly conduct their missions in wartime, a part-time service system for reserve cadres is used for such units. In peacetime, combat strength is maintained by recalling officer reservists for 20 days a year to participate in resource management and unit training; therefore they can promptly conduct their missions when they are mobilized. To organize reserve cadres as the homeland platoon leaders of reserve companies, the Establishment of Homeland Reserve Forces Act has been amended to expand the reserve cadre organization areas from town (eup), township (myeon) and neighborhood (dong) to city (si), county (gun) and district (gu).

In connection with the military structure reorganization, reserve force management

agencies<sup>3</sup> will be modified. Homeland defense operations will be efficiently controlled by organizing homeland local units as mid-command organizations between battalions and reserve companies, and reserve companies will be combined or disbanded based on the number of resources and operational area conditions. The reduced manpower due to the combination or disbandment of reserve companies will be transformed into newly established mobilization support groups and reserve force training units. The rank system for civilian workers in the military that manage the reserve forces will be subdivided from the existing 5<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> grades into a 4-9 system to enhance the efficiency of personnel management and revitalize the organization.

**| Improvement of Training Methods and Conditions for Reservists |** The MND conducts reserve force training for all reservists except training-deferred reservists.<sup>4</sup> Reserve force training is divided into mobilization training, supplementary mobilization reserve training, and homeland defense basic training. The reserve force training schedule categorized by type is shown in Chart 4-11.

**Chart 4-11. Reserve Force Training Schedule**

As of 2014

Category		Mobilization training	Supplementary mobilization reserve training	Homeland defense basic training	Homeland defense operations training	Roll call	
Soldiers	1-4 <sup>th</sup> year	Designated for mobilization	2 nights and 3 days	-	-	-	
		Non-designated	-	24 hours	-	12 hours	
	5-6 <sup>th</sup> year	Designated for mobilization	-	-	8 hours	6 hours	4 hours
		Non-designated			8 hours	12 hours	
7-8 <sup>th</sup> year		Organized without training					
Officers and NCOs	1-6 <sup>th</sup> year	Designated for mobilization	2 nights and 3 days	-	-	-	
		Non-designated		2 nights and 3 days			
	7 <sup>th</sup> year and up		Organized without training				
Volunteers					6 hours		

<sup>3</sup> The homeland defense reserve battalions that manage and operate the reserve forces. Mobilization support groups and reserve force training units are included.

<sup>4</sup> Personnel whose training is deferred and considered as completed based on the Establishment of Homeland Reserve Forces Act and as provided by the Minister of National Defense. They are defined by type of occupation, and when needed, the qualifications or standards can be set separately. Police officers and fire fighters are included.

Starting in 2014, a pass system by measurement and early release system have been expanded throughout the country to increase the effectiveness of reserve force training. By measuring the training results with an evaluation checklist, incentives such as early release and breaks are given. When there are a large number of excellent trainees, up to 30% are granted early release.

The training sites for mobilization training were changed from separate training sites to the mission conduct area of each unit to enable training to fit realistic situations. In one battalion for each regiment of a mobilization division, units are organized the same as during wartime to conduct Ssangyong training.

Starting in 2013, test operation of a scientific training site that can realistically train reservists began. The military plans to acquire 44 scientific training sites throughout the country to conduct scientific reserve force training at the regiment level by 2024.

At the training sites, up-to-date combat training equipment such as the Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES) and imagery firing simulation training equipment will be installed, and the training sites will be operated efficiently to minimize waiting time and accommodate rotational training.

To ensure the economic activities of reservists who cannot attend training during weekdays, the weekend training schedule has been expanded. A nationwide reserve force training system<sup>5</sup> is operated in which reservists can be trained at the location of their choice.

Three major inconveniences in reserve force training system regarding meals, transportation, and training site amenities have also been improved.

To improve the quality of the meals provided, menus are continuously reflecting reservists' tastes, and mobile food trucks are operated.

The transportation allowance was increased from 4,000 won in 2012 to 5,000 won in 2014, and the transportation allowance for roll call participants is also paid for. The training allowance for reserve force training participants will be increased annually and will be at 30,000 won by 2018. For additional training, the training allowance will be paid with consideration of the active duty officer's salary.

Reservist amenities have been improved by renovating old reservist cafeterias and installing exercise equipment and amenities in reserve force training sites so that local residents can also use them.

The conditions and environment for reserve force training will be improved through political efforts and budget allocation so that the reservists can solely concentrate on the training.

---

<sup>5</sup> This is a system to allow reservists to be able to train at reserve force training sites in other locations when there is an occupational or other reason.

## 2. Enhancing War Sustainment Capability

**| Procurement Innovation |** Procurement innovation is pursued to stably supply high-quality military materials in due time and at an appropriate price for each unit. Practice assignments were derived by conducting management diagnosis for defense force management in 2013. Starting in 2014, those assignments are carried out with pilot projects by launching the Logistics Innovation Committee.

To smoothly procure repair parts from overseas, vendors are systematically managed from the weapon system acquisition step, and the process is improved by identifying the cause for items that were not procured.

The military has greatly expanded the scope of military specifications disclosure, which can be an entry barrier for new vendors, so that many vendors can participate in the procurement.

The military has also diversified contract methods to suit the characteristics of each item. To stably procure military materials at the appropriate time, “long-term consecutive contracts”<sup>6</sup> have been expanded, and a “multiple award schedule (MAS)”<sup>7</sup> is applied to supply appropriate products for the demanding forces. To stably supply repair parts, a “performance-added basic ordering agreement (PABOA) system”<sup>8</sup> is also applied.

Based on the results of the pilot projects, the procurement goals will be specified to expand to full scale starting in 2015.

**| Improvement of Maintenance Support System |** As weapon systems get more high-tech, precise and complex, it is necessary to establish a national maintenance support system that integrates civilian and military assets. By utilizing the specialized maintenance capabilities of the military and private sector, the military can prevent overlapping investments and improve maintenance efficiency, and thus the continuous growth of the defense industry will be made possible once the private sector connects production and maintenance. To accomplish this, the military has adopted various advanced systems and utilizes civilian resources.

---

6 This is a contract system in accordance with Article 21 of the Act on Contracts to which the State is a Party, in which annual plans are established for products manufactured for several years to decide the entire project scale at the time of the contract and order the products each year within the budget for the year.

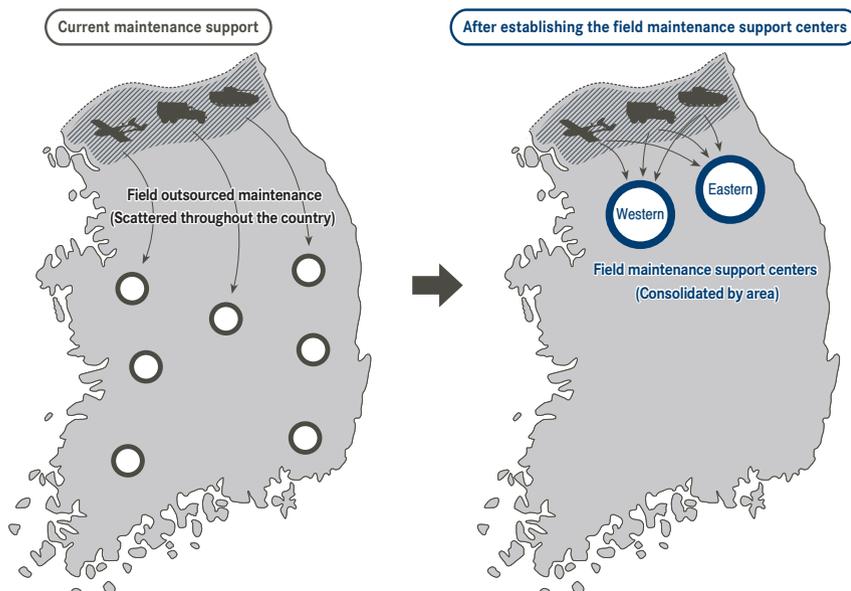
7 This is a contract system in accordance with Article 46 of the Defense Acquisition Program Act, in which, at the time of procuring military materials, the contracting agency has to conclude unit price contracts with two or more vendors that supply the same or similar products with the same or similar quality and function. Then, the demanding forces select the product and the selected vendor supplies the products.

8 This is a system in which, at the time of concluding a contract to supply repair parts for a weapon system, a contract term no longer than five years and a limited budget are set, and the military orders the repair parts as needed within the set budget. The vendors are rewarded based on their supply performance.

First, the Performance-Based Logistics (PBL) system<sup>9</sup> is expanded. The result of using the system from 2010 to 2013 showed that the procurement period for repair parts was reduced. Therefore, in 2014, the application range of the system, which was mainly used for air weapon systems, was expanded to ground and naval equipment such as the Cheonma detection and tracking equipment. Also, as it was applied in the management and maintenance steps after the acquisition of weapon systems, its efficiency is now increased by being applied to the acquisition step. It was first applied for FA-50 light attack aircraft, and it will be expanded to major weapon systems that will be acquired in the future.

Second, management of “field maintenance support centers” is pursued for prompt maintenance support in areas where major combat units are concentrated by utilizing the technology and resources of private maintenance service companies. Companies have been invited for the pilot project and target equipment was selected in 2014, and in 2015, the military plans to operate a pilot maintenance facility in the northern Gyeonggi-do area. Based on the results of the pilot project, the rates of combat equipment operation will be improved by additionally establishing such facilities in Gangwon-do; it will also contribute to vitalizing the local economy. The management concept of the field maintenance support centers is shown in Chart 4-12.

**Chart 4-12. Management Concept of the Field Maintenance Support Centers**



<sup>9</sup> A long-term contract concluded between logistic support companies and demanding forces in order to stably manage major military materials. In this system, demanding forces present performance indicators and goals such as targeted rates of operation and contractors provide part or all of the logistics support elements. The results of support are evaluated and contractors are rewarded based on their performance.

Third, to mitigate problems regarding the acquisition, operation, and inventory management of repair parts, the repair part operation system has undergone thorough innovation since 2014. To precisely estimate the demand for repair parts, a requirement estimation model will be developed by 2016 for each type of equipment with scientific methodology for use. The developed model has been tested after verification since 2014, and the equipment to which it is applied will gradually be expanded. In order to reduce the total amount of the repair part stock and respond to changes in demand more effectively, a system of central control and regulation of inventory in real time is established by resetting the inventory level for each item and managing the records of each repair part.

In the future, a national maintenance support system will be established to support the weapon system development trend, and the repair part operation system will be innovated to increase rates of equipment operation and ensure combat strength.

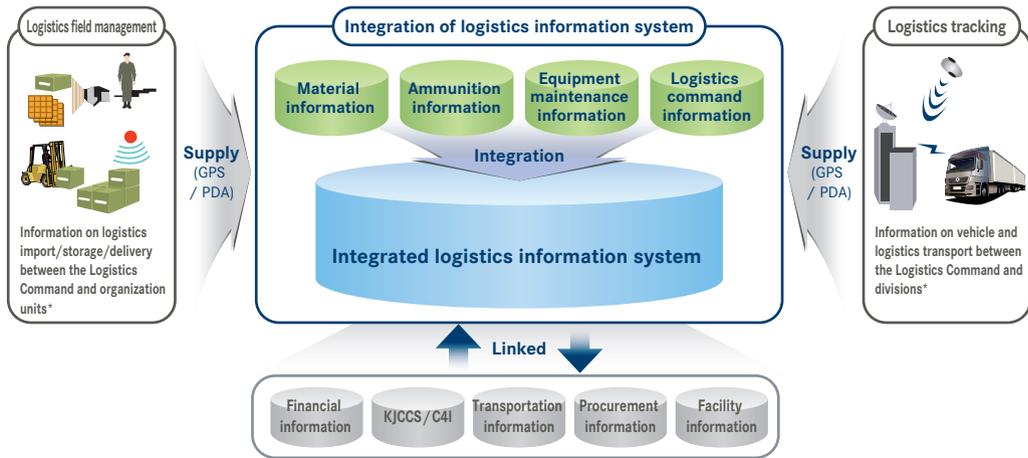
**| Improvement of User-oriented Military Logistics System |** To enhance war sustainment capability, the logistics system is important to provide support at the right time to meet the demands of the combat units. The MND pursues various policies to improve the system.

First, the supply time for the user, combat units, has been significantly reduced. The Logistics Command directly supplies military materials to each division, and the division gathers and delivers the logistics requests of the regiments. Therefore, the supply support system has been simplified from the existing four or five steps to two or three steps. This will reduce the average user waiting time from nine to 15 days to two to seven days.

Second, the MND plans on establishing a “field management automation system for logistics materials” by 2016 and an “integrated logistics information system” by 2017 to monitor logistics assets such as equipment, material, and ammunition in real time. In 2014, phase one of a pilot project was conducted with the First Logistics Support Command and the Second Corps of the Army, and phase two will be pursued with one Navy fleet and one Air Force wing in 2015. The MND plans to pursue this across the armed forces in 2016 by supplementing the related systems based on the results of the pilot project. The field management automation system for logistics materials is a system that reduces processing time by applying barcode scanning and mobile technology in the process of import, inspection, storage and release. The integrated logistics information system combines equipment maintenance, defense materials, and the Defense Ammunition Information System for the Army, Navy, and Air Force; it can be used from the MND to company/

squadron-level units. Fifteen logistics work areas<sup>10</sup> will be standardized and applied to the system, and various functions such as wartime and peacetime situation conversion will be included. The concept layout of the integrated logistics information system is shown in Chart 4-13.

Chart 4-13. Concept of the Integrated Logistics Information System



\* Organization units: The lowest-level echelons that conduct missions such as logistics requests, execution, and distribution

\* User units (division level)

Third, a prime vendor system has been expanded in its operation. This is a system where the user unit sends requests directly to the vendor to receive military supplies. The result of using this system showed that the waiting time for user units has been reduced from 17-25 days to nine days on average. By receiving high-quality supplies, the satisfaction of the units was increased, and the exhaustion of inventory and passing of expiration dates could be avoided by requesting the amounts needed by the units. The MND will continuously expand the application scope and number of items to enhance the effect of the prime vendor system.

In the future, the MND plans to continuously supplement various policies and systems such as improving the military logistics system and expanding the prime vendor system to maximize the military's combat readiness posture and war sustainment capability.

10 Requirements, planning and budgets, procurement, funds, properties, payments, transportation, storage, inspections and tests, equipment operation, maintenance and management, disposal handling, command evaluations, common support, and lists and specifications.



Introductory video for logistics innovation

**| Force Support System Development |** Force support systems<sup>11</sup> occupy 92% of military logistics, but do not keep up with the development speed of weapon systems.

First, in order to establish an agency that can carry out systematic research and development for force support systems, the groundwork has been in progress by a dedicated organization since 2013.

The “Force Support System Acquisition Guidance” and the “Defense Force Support System Project Plan” were published in 2013 to simplify the work process and reinforce the connection between the requirement planning and budget compilation of the force support systems.

Joint cooperative projects, including mountain bikes, aviation clothing, and the establishment of an avian control system, have been conducted with related agencies such as the Ministry of Trade, Industry and Energy and the Small and Medium Business Administration. By holding force support system development conferences since 2009, industry-academic-research institution cooperation has been reinforced.

In the future, the quality of the force support systems will be improved by adopting sophisticated civilian technology, and improvement efforts such as fielding a force support system at the right time will be reinforced.

**| Reinforcing International Logistics Cooperation |** To enhance war sustainment capability, there is a need not only to use domestic military and civilian resources efficiently, but also to secure endorsements and support from allies and friendly nations. In order to do so, the MND has reinforced the reciprocal logistics cooperation relationship with the United States according to security environment changes on the Korean Peninsula. The ROK-U.S. Logistics Cooperation Committee (LCC), which is a subcommittee of the Security Consultative Meeting (SCM), has served as a way to reinforce cooperation and discuss matters regarding logistics, such as repair parts, ammunition, and fuel support, for both countries since it was held for the first time in 1979. The 45<sup>th</sup> meeting was in 2014.

In 1991, the ROK and the United States concluded the Umbrella Agreement between the ROK and U.S. concerning Wartime Host Nation Support (WHNS UA) to increase the defense capability on the Korean Peninsula by supporting the rapid deployment of U.S. augmentation forces during wartime. Both countries are also pursuing the conclusion of the Memorandum of Agreement between the ROK and U.S. concerning Wartime Host Nation Support (WHNS MOA) to specify the responsibilities of defense cost sharing, etc.

---

<sup>11</sup> All elements to support the combat performance of troops and weapons (other than weapon systems), such as equipment, materials, general facilities, resource management, and base system software. The term “non-weapon system” was changed to “force support system” on January 1, 2012.

The MND keeps Mutual Logistics Support Agreements (MLSAs) with friendly nations to effectively ensure the logistics support needed for the seamless mission execution of friendly nations supporting the ROK in contingencies and for overseas deployment of the ROK military. The agreement was concluded in 1988 with the United States, and mutual logistics support is done for prompt requirements such as the unexpected demand for fuel, repair parts and services that occur during combined training or joint missions. The ROK has concluded MLSAs with 14 countries, including Thailand, New Zealand, Turkey, Australia, Canada, the United Kingdom and Spain, and most recently with Mongolia in 2013. The MLSA status is shown in Chart 4-14.

**Chart 4-14. Mutual Logistics Support Agreements Status**

Country	Conclusion Date	Title
United States	June 8, 1988	Mutual Logistics Support Agreement between the ROK and U.S. Governments
Thailand	November 4, 1991	MOU for Logistics Cooperation between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and Thailand Ministry of Defense
New Zealand	November 12, 2007	Arrangement on Logistics Cooperation between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and New Zealand Joint Forces
Turkey	May 27, 2008	MOU for Mutual Logistics Support between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and Turkey Chiefs of the General Staff
Philippines	December 4, 2009	MOU for Mutual Logistics Cooperation between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and Philippines Department of National Defense
Israel	July 15, 2010	MOU for Mutual Exchange and Cooperation Enhancement between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and Israel Chiefs of the General Staff
	March 13, 2013	MOU for Mutual Exchange and Cooperation Enhancement between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and Israel Ministry of Defense
Australia	August 13, 2010	MOU for Mutual Logistics Cooperation between the ROK and Australia Department of Defense
Canada	September 22, 2010	MOU for Mutual Logistics Support between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and Canada Ministry of National Defense
	September 10, 2012	1 <sup>st</sup> Amendment of MOU for Mutual Logistics Support between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and Canada Department of National Defense
Indonesia	December 7, 2011	MOU for Mutual Logistics Cooperation between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and Indonesia National Guard
Cambodia	August 7, 2012	MOU for Mutual Logistics Support between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and Cambodia Ministry of National Defense
Spain	December 10, 2012	MOU for Mutual Logistics Support between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and Spain Ministry of Defense
United Kingdom	December 14, 2012	MOU for Mutual Logistics Support between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and United Kingdom Ministry of Defense
New Zealand	September 18, 2013	Arrangement on Logistics Cooperation between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and New Zealand Joint Forces
Mongolia	December 16, 2013	MOU for Mutual logistics support between the ROK Ministry of National Defense and Mongolia Ministry of Defense

In the future, the MND plans on concluding MLSAs with the member nations of the United Nations Command and improving logistics cooperation with friendly nations to secure high-demand supplies during wartime such as ammunition and fuel.

Also, the ROK military contributes to the expansion of defense cooperation and increase in defense exports by strategically transferring the military supplies that are no longer being used to developing friendly nations in the process of modernizing weapon systems. In the past, transfers were mainly made with Asian countries, but recently transfer candidates have expanded to countries in Central America and Africa. Previously, the transfers were mostly aircraft and engineering equipment, but since 2013, a variety of military materials, such as patrol combat corvettes (PCCs), amphibious assault vehicles (AAVs), naval guns and naval munitions have been transferred.

# Section 4 Development of Defense Informatization

---

Defense informatization plays a crucial role by visualizing battlefields and realizing information sharing to win wars using state of the art information communication technology (ICT). Therefore, the MND develops a defense informatization development framework and establishes a sophisticated information and communications infrastructure and information system. To respond effectively against cyber threats, cyber security capability is also reinforced.

---

## 1. Developing Defense Informatization System and Introducing Advanced Information Technology

### | Improvement of Defense Informatization Planning Documents and Instructions |

The MND revised the “Defense Informatization Basic Plan” in March 2014, reflecting the direction of defense informatization, changing security environments and ICT development trends. The plan is the highest-level planning document based on the Act on Establishment of Infrastructure for Informatization of National Defense and Management of Informational Resources for National Defense (Defense Informatization Act) enacted in 2010, providing the direction of development for mid- to long-term defense informatization.

According to the Defense Informatization Act, a “Defense Informatization Implementation Plan” has been established every year since 2012 to carry out informatization projects. This plan, based on the Defense Informatization Basic Plan and the defense budget operation plan, is the budget execution plan for the year when it was established.

The Directive for Defense Informatization Affairs, which was issued in 2011 to establish the operational procedures and standards required for implementing the Defense Informatization Act, was revised in July 2014 to improve it according to the performance results and internal and external environmental changes.

In the future, the Defense Informatization Act and the Directive for Defense Informatization Affairs will be continuously developed to suit defense policies and environment changes, and the implementation plans for the Defense Informatization Basic Plan will be

revised every year to reflect ICT development trends and yearly requirement changes.

**| Timely Introduction of Advanced Information Technology |** The MND has pushed forward the “Defense Experiment” project and “government-wide IT Convergence R&D Cooperation” project to introduce new and improved IT in a timely manner.

The Defense Experiment project is done to introduce new civilian IT in the defense area and distribute it to all the military by phase after evaluating its appropriateness. Since 2007, three or four tasks have been selected and processed every year.

In April 2012, the MND concluded a memorandum of understanding with the Ministry of Knowledge and Economy (now the Ministry of Science, ICT and Future Planning) to carry forward the government-wide IT Convergence R&D Cooperation project. The MND discovers the target objective tasks; the military tests and evaluates the developed technology; and the Ministry of Science, ICT and Future Planning supports the budget. Currently, four tasks, including “simulation development for the tactical proficiency of small units,” are being pursued.

To respond promptly to IT convergence paradigm changes and to improve expertise and efficiency in the area of new IT, organizations dedicated to defense IT convergence and technology support organizations specializing in new IT were designated and have been operating since 2013.

In the future, pilot projects will be pushed forward by discovering new services for the convergence of new ICT with national defense, such as the Internet of Things,<sup>1</sup> cloud computing, big data<sup>2</sup> and mobile technology, with enhanced security to realize a “Creative Defense.”

## **2. Sophistication of Information Communication Infrastructure and Information Systems**

**| Sophistication of Information Communication Infrastructure |** The MND has been developing an All-IP based<sup>3</sup> defense information communication infrastructure to accomplish real-time information distribution.

---

<sup>1</sup> An environment where daily life objects are connected with wired and wireless networks to share information. Various objects in different areas can be connected, such as appliances, electronics, healthcare and remote meter inspections.

<sup>2</sup> A large-volume set of data impossible to be processed manually.

<sup>3</sup> A consolidated network of many networks built based on Internet protocols. In all-IP networks, all existing networks, such as landline telephone networks, international mobile communication networks, and wireless networks, are combined into one IP-based network. It has a packet network structure to process voice, data, and multimedia, based on the IP telephony method.

The Military Broadband Convergence Network (MBCN), established in 2011, has been optimized and developed into a system maintained and managed by an expert operator. Based on this, wired information communication networks will be consolidated by phase to become a unified system.

A project to consolidate defense information resources, such as the servers and application systems distributed in the Army, Navy, and Air Force as well as in government agencies, was completed in December 2014, and it enabled more efficient management for information resources. In particular, by establishing facilities with ensured survivability, such as quakeproof and security functions, dualization and robust data protection, a stable informatization service can be provided in both peacetime and wartime.

In the future, reflecting the trends in ICT development, a cloud computing environment will be established and developed into a wireless- and mobile-oriented information communication environment.

**| Establishing Information Systems and Ensuring Interoperability |** Defense informatization contributes to the realization of the national defense vision and objectives by developing information systems for the battlefield and resource management areas. The resource management information system focuses on new developments and upgrades based on defense architecture. In the future, it is planned to be developed focusing on services based on the integrated environment of defense computing resources. The battlefield management information system will be continuously upgraded by identifying improvement requirements for each function. It also prepares for the wartime operational control (OPCON) transition to include the ROK military-led Allied Korea Joint Command and Control System (AKJCCS).

In order to ensure interoperability among all battlefield elements, the MND is establishing an authentication test evaluation system and securing necessary expertise with a goal to activate the interoperability evaluation authentication system based on international standards by 2016. To achieve this goal, a master plan was designed in June 2013, and the “Joint Interoperability Technology Center,” which is an executing organization for interoperability test evaluation, was designated in September 2013 as the military executive agency; thus, the necessary expertise and independence were achieved.

The Defense Information Technical stANDARD (DITA)<sup>4</sup> is to be updated every year, and when a defense information system is established, only products that follow the standards can be acquired or developed. Evaluation measures to verify interoperability requirements

---

<sup>4</sup> This is a standard to secure compatibility and interoperability between systems, and it is applied in the development of defense weapons and force support systems.

and implementation state will be established by 2015.

### 3. Reinforcing Defense Cyber Security Capability

**| Developing the Cyber Security System |** Cyber threats are becoming more intellectualized and sophisticated, as evidenced by the cyber terror incident in March 2013 and the mass spill of personal data from credit card companies in 2014, and are becoming serious threats to national security.

The MND has prepared a systematic foundation to respond against cyber threats by establishing the Cyber Security Master Plan of National Defense and adopting the “Cyber Security Assessment of National Defense” system to protect cyberspace.

The security mission execution system of the Computer Emergency Response Team (CERT)<sup>5</sup> is developed for each echelon, and a customized educational system and cyber simulation training center is operated to reinforce the expertise of the CERT personnel.

To reinforce international cooperation against transnational cyber threats, an MOU on Information Assurance and Computer Network Defense between the ROK and the United States has been concluded, and information exchange and cooperation with friendly nations, such as the ROK-Australia Information Communication Technology Forum, is also actively promoted.

In the future, a multi-layered cyber security strategy will be developed in connection with network-centric operations, and cyber security measures will be prepared in advance to utilize advanced information technology in a timely manner.

**| Sophistication of Information Protection Systems |** The MND continuously improves its multi-level and multi-layered protection systems, such as antivirus systems, to protect systems from cyber threats during peacetime and wartime.

In 2013, the control over major servers and networks was reinforced by establishing a real-time cyber threat response system, and in 2014, personal data protection software and encoding systems were supplemented. In particular, to prepare against the possible abuse of smart phones due to their wide use, measures have been established to prevent military data leakage through communication devices.

A strategy to rapidly develop and apply core cyber security technologies specialized for defense is developed, and efforts are made to secure the required budget.

---

<sup>5</sup> The CERT is an organization that prevents or instantly responds to computer or network emergencies with a comprehensive control system for information protection.

To strengthen the cyber security infrastructure, it is planned that information protection systems will be reinforced and will be applied to all armed forces.

# Chapter 5

## Developing the ROK-U.S. Alliance and Reinforcing Defense Diplomacy and Cooperation



Section 1 Development of a Future-Oriented ROK-U.S. Alliance	114
Section 2 Wartime OPCON Transition that Contributes to the Reinforcement of the ROK-U.S. Combined Defense Posture	123
Section 3 Expansion of Defense Diplomacy and Cooperation	130
Section 4 Contributing to World Peace through Overseas Deployments	142



# Section 1 Development of a Future-Oriented ROK-U.S. Alliance

---

ROK-U.S. defense relations are developing into a comprehensive strategic alliance that transcends their traditional security cooperation. The ROK and the United States reinforce their collective defense endeavors and cope jointly with transnational security threats such as cyber threats and weapons of mass destruction (WMD) based on the principles of the ROK-U.S. Mutual Defense Treaty, thereby contributing to world peace and stability. In addition, the two nations pursue various initiatives to not only ensure a stable stationing environment for the U.S. Forces Korea (USFK) but also enhance mutual understanding between the ROK and the United States. In the future, the ROK-U.S. Alliance will be further developed based on the trust that has continued from the past.

---

## 1. Developing into a Comprehensive Strategic Alliance

**| Actualization of a Vision for the ROK-U.S. Alliance |** The ROK-U.S. Alliance dawned during the Korean War, and it is based on the ROK-U.S. Mutual Defense Treaty, which was concluded in October 1953 between the Republic of Korea and the United States. For over 60 years, the ROK-U.S. Alliance has been a firm foundation and driving force for the ROK to achieve a liberal democracy and economic prosperity in the face of persistent North Korean threats and provocations.

As an alliance forged in blood through the Korean War, the ROK and the United States have been partners for prosperity for more than 60 years as “valued allies” that now transcend a military alliance. The ROK-U.S. Alliance has been the foundation for peace and prosperity not only on the Korean Peninsula, but also in the Asia-Pacific region and the world. Today, the Alliance has been upgraded to a comprehensive strategic alliance that goes beyond security cooperation based on a broad range of cooperation in politics, economy, culture, and personnel exchanges.

The “Joint Vision for the ROK-U.S. Alliance” of 2009 was a key initiative that developed the ROK-U.S. Alliance into a comprehensive alliance. The ROK and the United States decided to pursue cooperation that incorporates military, diplomacy, security, economy, society, and culture in a mutually beneficial manner while sharing common values such as liberal democracy, human rights and a market economy. In addition, they reached an agreement to develop the Alliance so that it contributes to the peace and prosperity of not

only the Korean Peninsula but also East Asia and the world.

In 2010, based on the Joint Vision for the ROK-U.S. Alliance and the ROK-U.S. Mutual Defense Treaty, the “Guidelines for ROK-U.S. Defense Cooperation” was concluded to pursue the joint vision. The ROK-U.S. Alliance serves as a linchpin not only for the stability of the Korean Peninsula, but also for peace and stability in the Asia-Pacific region, and the ROK and the United States will keep on improving the Alliance so that it is capable of responding to the new security challenges of the 21<sup>st</sup> century.

To commemorate the 60<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the ROK-U.S. Alliance, President Park Geun-hye and President Barack Obama held a summit on May 7, 2013, and adopted a joint declaration to celebrate the 60 years of the Alliance and joint prosperity between the ROK and the United States. As allies and Asia-Pacific nations, the ROK and the United States declared that they will build a future for Asia for the coming generations based on the Alliance of the past 60 years.



Joint Declaration in Commemoration of the 60<sup>th</sup> Anniversary of the ROK-U.S. Alliance (May 2013)

In the ROK-U.S. summit held on April 25, 2014, the two Presidents agreed on major issues such as revisiting the timing of the wartime operational control (OPCON) transition, cooperating on the “complete, verifiable, and irreversible” denuclearization of North Korea, holding the ROK-U.S. Foreign and Defense Ministers’ Meeting (2+2) within the year, and strengthening the trilateral information sharing among the ROK, U.S. and Japan to respond to North Korean nuclear and missile threats.<sup>1</sup>

**| Expanding the Alliance’s Cooperation Level and Areas |** The ROK and the United States continuously expand their cooperation areas in order to develop the Alliance into a comprehensive strategic alliance as presented in the Joint Vision for the ROK-U.S. Alliance, Guidelines for ROK-U.S. Defense Cooperation, and the Joint Declaration in Commemoration of the 60<sup>th</sup> Anniversary of the ROK-U.S. Alliance.

The ROK-U.S. Alliance expands the scope of cooperation into cyber, space, disasters due to climate changes, counter-piracy and other maritime security matters, and the Proliferation Security Initiative (PSI)<sup>2</sup> to prevent the spread of WMD, and they also participate in UN-led

<sup>1</sup> On December 29, 2014, the ROK, U.S. and Japanese defense authorities concluded a trilateral information sharing arrangement concerning the nuclear and missile threats posed by North Korea. The information shared in accordance with this arrangement is limited to information on North Korean nuclear and missile threats, and the three nations will share such information within the scope of mutual consent.

<sup>2</sup> This is an international cooperative organization to prevent the proliferation of WMD by interdicting illegal transactions of WMD and missiles.

peacekeeping operations.

The ROK and the United States share information and reinforce exchanges in cyber policy, strategy, doctrine and training by concluding the Terms of Reference for the ROK-U.S. Cyber Cooperation Working Group in 2012. Also, the Terms of Reference for ROK-U.S. Defense Space Cooperation was concluded in 2012 to enhance the cooperation of both countries for defense space capability reinforcement.

The Alliance's geographical scope of cooperation also expands to East Asia and to the world. In East Asia, the ROK and the United States cooperate not only in humanitarian assistance and disaster relief, but also in reinforcing regional security cooperation, such as the ASEAN Defence Ministers' Meeting Plus (ADMM-Plus).

Nuclear security summits, combined counter-piracy operations in the Gulf of Aden, ROK-U.S. combined search and rescue exercises, PSI exercises, and cooperation in peacekeeping operations are also conducted.

Also, the ROK and the United States will contribute to the peace and stability of Northeast Asia and the world by continuously expanding the areas of cooperation for the Alliance.

## **2. Maintaining a Firm ROK-U.S. Combined Defense Posture**

The purpose of the existence of the ROK-U.S. Alliance is to deter North Korean provocations and maintain stability on the Korean Peninsula. The militaries of the two countries maintain a combined defense posture that deters North Korean provocations and aggression, and defeats provocations when they occur.

The military forces of both countries respond to North Korean threats by categorizing them into peacetime threats, local provocations, aggression, and asymmetric provocations.

In peacetime, the ROK and the United States develops plans for operations while reinforcing combined exercises. To maintain an effective combined defense posture, they operate various consultative bodies such as the Security Consultative Meeting (SCM), Korea-U.S. Integrated Defense Dialogue (KIDD),<sup>3</sup> and the ROK-U.S. Military Committee Meeting (MCM).<sup>4</sup>

The ROK-U.S. militaries develop operational plans and gain proficiency in these plans through combined exercises to prepare against local provocations. If a crisis situation escalates, the U.S. strategic assets are deployed to the Korean Peninsula to deter North

---

<sup>3</sup> The KIDD has been operated since 2012 to increase efficiency and effectiveness by combining the various ROK-U.S. defense consultative groups.

<sup>4</sup> The highest-level consultative group between the ROK and U.S. militaries held annually by the Joint Chiefs of Staff of both countries.

Korean threats. The ROK and the United States completed the “ROK-U.S. Combined Counter-Provocation Plan (CPP)” in March 2013 to rapidly and effectively respond to North Korea’s local provocations. ROK-U.S. combined exercises are also conducted regularly, applying the most realistic scenarios to manage and respond to any crisis.

From March to April in 2013, immediately after North Korea’s third nuclear test, strategic deterrence was achieved by rapidly deploying B-2 and B-52 strategic bombers, F-22 fifth-generation fighters, submarines, and aircraft carriers to the Korean Peninsula.

To prepare against aggression, the ROK and the United States continuously develop combined operational plans, and carry out ROK-U.S. combined exercises annually to gain proficiency in the plans and to verify the plans. The Key Resolve exercise and Foal Eagle training, which are ROK-U.S. combined exercises, are performed in the first half of every year, and the Ulchi Freedom Guardian (UFG) exercise is performed in the second half of every year.

The ROK and the United States have agreed to organize a ROK-U.S. combined division to reinforce the tactical-level combined defense posture. The division will maintain a wartime mission posture in peacetime by carrying out combined exercises and developing doctrines, and executing various missions according to operational plans for wartime. The ROK-U.S. combined division will contribute to the combined defense posture by vitalizing the tactical-level combined exercises during peacetime, and will present an opportunity to enhance the combined operations execution capabilities of the ROK military in the future.

The ROK and the United States decided to keep the USFK counter-fire forces north of the Han River to respond more effectively to the intensifying threat posed by North Korean long-range artillery. The USFK counter-fire forces will relocate to Camp Humphreys, Pyeongtaek, when the ROK counter-fire forces reinforcement plan is completed and their capabilities are verified. The ROK military plans to complete the reinforcement of its counter-fire forces by the mid-2020s.

Additionally, the ROK and the United States prepare against the North Korean provocations using asymmetric forces, including nuclear weapons and missiles. The United States provides the ROK with extended deterrence by utilizing all spectrums of military capabilities, including a nuclear umbrella, conventional strikes, and missile defense capabilities against North Korean WMD threats. The ROK and the United States further refined the extended deterrence strategy, and developed and signed the “Tailored Deterrence Strategy” (TDS) prepared against North Korean nuclear and WMD threats in October 2013. Based on this, the two countries enhance the reliability of the extended deterrence by establishing tailored strategies for various North Korean WMD threats.

In the future, combined operational plans will be refined through regular combined exercises and training, and the combined defense posture will be continuously reinforced by stably managing alliance issues through various defense consultative bodies.

### 3. Ensuring a Stable Stationing Environment for United States Forces Korea

**| USFK Base Relocation |** USFK base relocation is a project that consolidates USFK bases scattered throughout the country into two hub bases in Pyeongtaek and Daegu. This is designed to ensure the balanced development of the ROK territory and stable stationing environment for the USFK.

The USFK base relocation project consists of two plans: the Yongsan Relocation Plan (YRP)<sup>5</sup> for the relocation of the USFK headquarters in Yongsan to Pyeongtaek; and the Land Partnership Plan (LPP)<sup>6</sup> for the relocation of the U.S. 2<sup>nd</sup> Infantry Division located in Dongducheon and Uijeongbu to Pyeongtaek. According to the principles specifying that relocation costs are to be paid by the requesting party, the relocation costs for the YRP are to be paid by the ROK, and costs for the LPP are paid by the United States. In May 2003, the two Presidents agreed to relocate the Yongsan Garrison earlier than planned, and the execution of the plan took off at full scale after the “Agreement between the Republic of Korea and the United States of America on the Relocation of United States Forces from the Seoul Metropolitan Area” was concluded in 2004. Since the initiating of the LPP based on the “Agreement between the Republic of Korea and the United States of America for the Land Partnership Plan” in 2002 and the expansion of the relocation criteria through the “Revised Agreement between the Republic of Korea and the United States of America for the Land Partnership Plan” in 2004, the LPP has been on course in terms of implementation.

In March 2007, the ROK and the United States concluded a “Facility Master Plan” that governs the relocation of major USFK bases such as the Yongsan Garrison and the U.S. 2<sup>nd</sup> Infantry Division to Pyeongtaek. At present, base foundation works and the construction of infrastructure such as roads, electricity, gas and waterworks are either completed or in progress, and many other construction projects are on plan. In accordance with the “Special Act on Support, etc. for Pyeongtaek-si, etc. Following Relocation of U.S. Military Bases in Korea,” the construction of residential support facilities and amenities including roads, waterworks, sewerage facilities, and town halls for the residents in Pyeongtaek who were displaced due to the relocation are also underway. In the process of relocating the USFK bases, 51 bases have been returned to the ROK as of September 2014, and 29 additional bases will be returned.

In the future, the ROK and the United States will pursue the project in a timely manner while resolving any issues that could arise during the execution of the YRP and the LPP, as both countries recognize the importance of relocating and returning USFK bases.

---

<sup>5</sup> It was signed on October 26, 2004 by the ROK and the United States.

<sup>6</sup> The ROK and the United States concluded a letter of intent during the 33<sup>rd</sup> Security Consultative Meeting held in 2001.

**| Negotiations on Defense Burden Sharing |** Defense burden sharing refers to the ROK government bearing a portion of the total stationing costs of the USFK, which plays an important role in the defense of the Korean Peninsula. According to Article 5 of the Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA) concluded by the ROK and the United States in 1966, the United States is to bear the stationing costs of the USFK, and the ROK is to grant facilities and sites. However, until 1991, the United States not only covered the stationing costs but also provided funds for the construction of necessary facilities in consideration of the economic situation of the ROK at the time.

In 1991, the ROK and the United States concluded the Special Measures Agreement (SMA) relating to Article 5 of the SOFA with the consideration of the financial conditions of the ROK government, and since then, the ROK has been sharing a portion of the USFK's stationing costs.

The ROK and U.S. governments started the ninth SMA negotiations in May 2013. The two countries came to an agreement in January 2014 with a comprehensive consideration of the ROK's financial capacity, ensuring a stable stationing environment for the USFK, maintaining the combined defense posture, and enhancing accountability and transparency in executing the burden sharing funds.

The effective period of the validity of the ninth SMA is five years, and in the first year of enforcement, 2014, the total contribution was 920 billion won. In order to enhance transparency and accountability in executing the burden sharing funds, the ROK and the United States agreed on a comprehensive system improvement of the burden sharing program. The details of the SMA are shown in Chart 5-1, and the defense burden sharing status is shown in Chart 5-2.

**Chart 5-1. Details of the Special Measures Agreement**

- 
- Reinforcing prior coordination in the process of allocating the cost sharing categories
  - Establishing a permanent prior consultation mechanism for ROK Funded Construction
  - Resolving problems for small and medium companies in Logistics Cost Sharing
  - Promoting the welfare of Korean workers in the USFK and enhancing transparency in Labor Cost Sharing
  - Reinforcing transparency in defense budget planning and settlement (reporting to the National Assembly)
- 

More than 90% of the defense burden sharing is redirected to the ROK economy. Since the labor costs are used for Korean employees working for the USFK, 100% of the executed amount is redirected to the domestic economy.

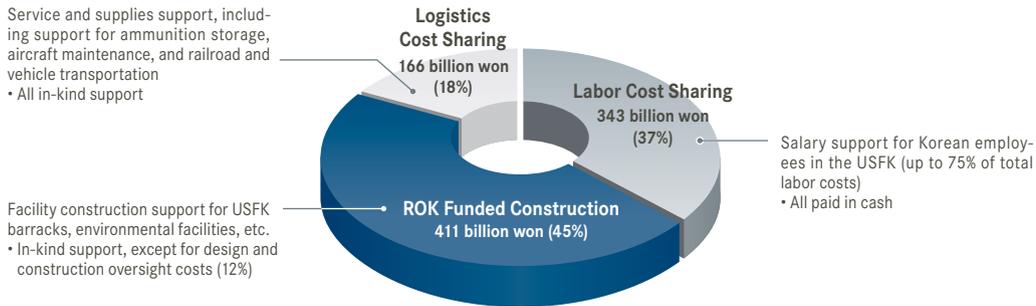
It can be said that 88% of the ROK Funded Construction cost is actually returned to the ROK economy since domestic companies execute the construction contracts, orders, and construction management, except for the design and construction oversight costs, which constitute 12%.

All of the Logistics Cost Sharing is returned to the ROK economy since domestic Korean contractors are executing the projects.

The ROK and the United States will continue to cooperate closely to carry out system improvements and to execute and operate the burden sharing program smoothly.

**Chart 5-2. Defense Burden Sharing Status**

As of 2014



## 4. Enhancement of Mutual Understanding between the ROK and the United States

### | Successful Commemorative Events for the 60<sup>th</sup> Anniversary of the ROK-U.S. Alliance |

The Ministry of National Defense (MND) hosted commemorative events and promoted 10 commemorative projects for the 60<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the ROK-U.S. Alliance to evaluate the past 60 years of the Alliance and to shed light on the next 60 years.

To strengthen the friendship and trust of the two countries, a “Friendship Night for the ROK-U.S. Alliance” in commemoration of the 60<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the ROK-U.S. Alliance and a “Special Event for Alliance Contributors” were hosted, and the Paik Sun-yup ROK-U.S. Alliance Award was created. For the harmony of the two countries, a “Comrade Marathon for the ROK-U.S. Alliance,” “ROK-U.S. Military’s Joint Concert,” and “ROK-U.S. Alliance Concert” were hosted. To record the history of the Alliance and to present the future vision of the Alliance, a seminar for the development of the Joint Vision for the ROK-U.S. Alliance and an academic seminar for the ROK-U.S. Alliance were held. Also, a documentary on the 60<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Alliance and a book titled “The History of the ROK-U.S. Alliance” were produced and published.

Chart 5-3. Ten Projects to Commemorate the 60<sup>th</sup> Anniversary of the ROK-U.S. Alliance



Through all the commemorative events, the national consensus regarding the role and contribution of the ROK-U.S. Alliance was expanded, and the stability of the Alliance was demonstrated at home and abroad. Also, by strengthening the trust and bonds between the governments, militaries, and citizens of the two countries, the framework to prepare for the next 60 years was established.

**| Strengthening ROK-U.S. Friendship Activities** |

The ROK government and military strengthen the friendship of both countries as blood-forged allies by inviting the USFK personnel to various events and carrying out mutual exchange programs annually. The ROK government and local autonomous entities are inviting USFK members to traditional Korean cultural experience events and programs every year to help them improve their understanding of the history and culture of Korea. Civilians are also actively holding events to invite USFK members to common households to increase mutual understanding and gratefully acknowledge the dedication of the USFK. There are various civilian group activities devoted to the development of the ROK-U.S. Alliance, such as the Korean-American Friendship Association and the ROK-U.S. Security Research Institute.

The USFK also hosts various events and programs to increase mutual understanding and



Comrade Marathon for the ROK-U.S. Alliance (September 2013)



ROK-U.S. Alliance 60<sup>th</sup> anniversary documentary

the development of the ROK-U.S. Alliance. The “Good Neighbor Program” best represents such programs. The USFK tries to enhance mutual understanding and advertise the positive role of the USFK to Korean citizens by teaching English to local citizens where the USFK is stationed, inviting citizens to the base for events, and giving awards to contributors for the ROK-U.S. Alliance. The USFK also periodically invites the heads of media companies and police commanders from the local area where they are based to execute accident prevention activities related to USFK members.

Also, the USFK actively provides programs to prevent accidents related to USFK members by providing education on traditional Korean culture and periodic moral education by commanders for the service members who come to Korea for the first time. The USFK also plans to host regular press conferences to promote the role and efforts of the USFK for the defense of the ROK to Korean citizens.

# Section 2 Wartime OPCON Transition that Contributes to the Reinforcement of the ROK-U.S. Combined Defense Posture

---

The ROK and the United States agreed on a “conditions-based wartime operational control transition” during the 46<sup>th</sup> Security Consultative Meeting (SCM) held in Washington, D.C. on October 23, 2014. The two countries will enhance the completeness of the wartime operational control (OPCON) transition by establishing a new and strong combined defense system to deter war on the Korean Peninsula and ensure the security of the ROK in contingencies until the wartime OPCON transition takes place.

---

## 1. Background and History

Discussions between the ROK and the United States on the transition of OPCON began in the late 1980s. The ROK and the United States agreed at the 13<sup>th</sup> ROK-U.S. Military Committee Meeting (MCM) in 1991 to transfer the armistice OPCON (peacetime OPCON) over the ROK military sometime between 1993 and 1995. In 1993, the two countries agreed to “transfer armistice OPCON over the ROK military units to the Chairman of the ROK Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS) as of December 1, 1994,” at the 15<sup>th</sup> MCM and the 25<sup>th</sup> SCM. Consequently, armistice OPCON was transferred to the ROK military on December 1, 1994.

Discussions on the wartime OPCON transition began after the year 2000, to develop a combined command structure which corresponds with the changed security environment involving the growth of the ROK’s national power and the ROK military’s improved capabilities, and U.S. military reform including that of the USFK.

Discussions on the wartime OPCON transition was fully initiated with an agreement to accelerate discussions on command relations and wartime OPCON reached at the 37<sup>th</sup> SCM on October 21, 2005. The ROK and the United States agreed on the basic principles for wartime OPCON transition during a ROK-U.S. summit on September 16, 2006, and on February 23, 2007, the ROK Defense Minister and the U.S. Secretary of Defense agreed on the transfer date of April 17, 2012.

At a Permanent Military Committee (PMC) meeting on June 28, 2007, the Chairman of the

ROK JCS and the Senior U.S. Military Officer Assigned to Korea (SUSMOAK) signed the “Strategic Transition Plan” (STP)<sup>1</sup> to transfer wartime OPCON from the ROK-U.S. Combined Forces Command (CFC) to the ROK JCS. The plan, approved by both the ROK Defense Minister and the U.S. Secretary of Defense on November 7, at the 39<sup>th</sup> SCM, provided a concrete basis for implementing wartime OPCON transition.

North Korea’s series of military provocations, including its second nuclear test and a long-range missile launch in 2009 and the attack on the ROK Ship *Cheonan* in 2010, heightened tension on the Korean Peninsula, and the instability of the North Korean regime was deepened with the failure of their currency reform and deteriorating health of Kim Jong-il. The year 2012 was a period of high volatility in terms of politics and security, with leadership changes in several countries in the region, including the ROK. Against this backdrop, there was growing public concern that the transition of wartime OPCON should be postponed, and consequently, the ROK government raised the need to adjust the timing of the wartime OPCON transition to the U.S. government. As a result, it was agreed at the ROK-U.S. summit on June 26, 2010 that the timing of the wartime OPCON transition would be readjusted from April 17, 2012 to December 1, 2015.

The ROK Minister of National Defense and the U.S. Secretary of Defense signed the Strategic Alliance 2015 (SA 2015)<sup>2</sup> at the 42<sup>nd</sup> SCM in October 2010, which includes the military actions for the wartime OPCON transition and the development plan for alliance initiatives.

Since then, the security situation on the Korean Peninsula has faced a new juncture with North Korea’s continuous nuclear and missile threats, such as two long-range missile launches in April and December 2012, and its third nuclear test in February 2013. Concern about the potential of a misjudgment by Kim Jong-un’s regime if wartime OPCON was transferred during such security situations was raised.

Therefore, at the 45<sup>th</sup> SCM on October 2, 2013, the two countries agreed that the ROK and the United States would consult at a working level to reach a final agreement in the next SCM. By organizing a ROK-U.S. working group, and through numerous consultations, the final agreement was made to implement the “conditions-based wartime operational



46<sup>th</sup> Security Consultative Meeting (October 2014)

---

1 This is a ROK-U.S. combined strategic document containing tasks and milestones leading up to the wartime OPCON transition.  
2 This is a ROK-U.S. combined strategic document to replace the existing STP, which is the standard document for the wartime OPCON transition. It includes military actions for the wartime OPCON transition and the development plan for alliance initiatives until the time of transition.

control transition” during the 46<sup>th</sup> SCM on October 23, 2014.

Currently, the MND operates the Combined Defense Transformation Group (CDTG), directly under the Chairman of the ROK JCS, to seamlessly pursue the tasks regarding the wartime OPCON transition.

**Chart 5-4. Chronology of the Wartime OPCON Transition**

Date	Major Contents
July 14, 1950	President Syngman Rhee transferred operational command authority (OPCOM) over the ROK military to the UNC Commander.
November 17, 1954	OPCON over the ROK military delegated to the UNC Commander.
November 7, 1978	CFC established; OPCON transferred to the CFC Commander.
December 1, 1994	Armistice OPCON over the ROK military transferred to the Chairman of the ROK JCS.
September 16, 2006	Wartime OPCON transition agreed at the ROK-U.S. summit.
February 23, 2007	ROK Minister of National Defense and U.S. Secretary of Defense agreed on the timing (April 17, 2012) of the wartime OPCON transition.
June 28, 2007	ROK and U.S. agreed on the Strategic Transition Plan.
June 26, 2010	At the ROK-U.S. summit, the two nations agreed to adjust the timing of transition to the end of 2015.
October 8, 2010	ROK Minister of National Defense and the U.S. Secretary of Defense agreed on the SA 2015.
October 23, 2014	ROK Minister of National Defense and the U.S. Secretary of Defense agreed on “conditions-based wartime operational control transition.”

## 2. Major Progress

Based on the SA 2015, the ROK and the United States systematically prepare for the wartime OPCON transition in various areas such as planning, organization, capabilities and systems, exercises and certification.

The ROK and the United States operates a whole-of-government “combined implementation governance system,” addressing not only the military aspects, but also alliance initiatives, as shown in Chart 5-5. It is composed of three subcommittees which are military transition, planning and policy, and alliance management. The implementation status of related tasks is regularly evaluated at the subcommittees, the steering committee, the Strategic Alliance Working Group (SAWG), the Military Committee (MC), and the SCM.

Chart 5-5. Combined Implementation Governance System for the Strategic Alliance 2015



The ROK coordinates and manages the implementation tasks through a working-level evaluation meeting presided over by the Director of the CDTG and an implementation evaluation meeting presided over by the Chairman of the ROK JCS.

The progress in each area is summarized below.

**| Planning |** The ROK and the United States are developing a MOA for Alliance Crisis Management which will be applied after the wartime OPCON transition to operate the ROK-U.S. Alliance effectively in times of crisis on the Korean Peninsula. The operational plans that will be applied in wartime are being developed under close consultation based on the joint planning system and procedures agreed by the ROK and the United States.

**| Organization |** A new alliance military command structure is established so that the ROK military is able to lead theater operations on the Korean Peninsula. At first, the ROK and the United States decided to organize two theater commands, the ROK JCS and the USFK, but perceived that a unified combined command structure with reinforced military efficiency was needed. Accordingly, the concept of a future command structure where the ROK military takes command was agreed to at the 45<sup>th</sup> SCM in October 2013. Based on this agreement, the organization and command relations of the future combined theater command and combined component commands are developed.

**| Capabilities and Systems |** The ROK military secures the necessary critical military capabilities to lead the combined defense and has established a roadmap to accomplish this initiative. The U.S. military agreed to continuously provide the required capabilities until the ROK military is able to fully lead theater operations. The ROK military developed the Allied Korea Joint Command and Control System (AKJCCS), which is required to lead combined operations, and works to build interoperability between the AKJCCS and the ROK-U.S. C4I systems.

**| Exercises and Certification |** The ROK and the United States will evaluate and supplement the mission readiness and capabilities of the future combined theater command and combined component commands through combined exercises and certification, in which the new future command structure is applied. The ROK military executes necessary tasks by stages, such as building a Joint Warfighting Simulation Center, developing a theater-level function model, and acquiring exercise experts to establish the foundation for combined exercises led by the ROK JCS. A certification plan is also developed so that the ROK and U.S. experts can jointly evaluate the new command system on its capability to perform the actual missions.

**| Strategic Documents |** When the wartime OPCON transition is executed, documents that regulate the new combined command structure and the ROK-U.S. strategic dialogue system such as the SCM and MCM have to be newly prepared. Accordingly, the Terms of Reference (TOR)<sup>3</sup> and Strategic Directive<sup>4</sup> No. 3 are being drafted to replace the old TOR and Strategic Directive No. 2 which were drafted upon the armistice OPCON transition in 1994.

**| Alliance Initiatives |** Major alliance initiatives include the relocation of USFK and strategic communications.<sup>5</sup> The relocation of USFK is implemented in two parts: the Yongsan Relocation Plan (YRP) and the Land Partnership Plan (LPP), which consolidates USFK facilities scattered throughout the country. Coordination meetings for strategic communications are held every six months to update important agendas and main messages, and a detailed quarterly implementation plan and evaluation system are established.

### 3. Conditions-based Wartime Operational Control Transition

In May 2013, the Presidents of the ROK and the United States agreed that the wartime OPCON transition should proceed in a way that strengthens combined defense capability, and the ROK MND officially proposed to the U.S. Department of Defense to revisit the existing plan for the wartime OPCON transition, which is to be executed in 2015.

<sup>3</sup> These are the strategic guidelines of the ROK Ministry of National Defense and U.S. Secretary of Defense to regulate the combined defense system, being the highest-level strategic document sent down to the MC from the SCM.

<sup>4</sup> This is a directive of strategic guidelines based on the Terms of Reference, and is a strategic document sent to the theater command from the MC.

<sup>5</sup> A joint effort to induce changes in awareness, belief, and actions of major players by using all elements and means of national power in order to establish a favorable environment to reach the nation's strategic objective.

The major content of the proposal was to change the “time-based wartime OPCON transition” to a “conditions-based” transition. “Conditions-based wartime OPCON transition” means to decide the transition time according to whether or not the conditions both countries agreed to are satisfied, rather than setting a specific date such as April 17, 2012, or December 1, 2015, as previously determined. In other words, both countries decided to execute the wartime OPCON transition in a more stable manner by setting the ROK military’s military readiness and security situations to lead the combined defense after the wartime OPCON transition as conditions that need to be met.

In the 45<sup>th</sup> SCM in 2013, the ROK Defense Minister and U.S. Defense Secretary emphasized that the combined defense posture has to be maintained strongly and thoroughly with the systematic execution of wartime OPCON transition while focusing on the dynamic security situations including North Korean nuclear and missile threats. Additionally, they agreed to consult on the conditions and timing of transition.

In April 2014, the two Presidents of the ROK and the United States shared the understanding that the timing for wartime OPCON transition can be reconsidered by considering the security environment on the Korean Peninsula and in the region, and urged their teams to continue to work hard to determine the appropriate timing and conditions. In October of the same year, the ROK Ministry of National Defense and the U.S. Department of Defense agreed to implement the conditions-based wartime OPCON transition while developing the current ROK-U.S. Combined Forces Command<sup>6</sup> to a new Future Command (tentative name)<sup>7</sup> led by the ROK military based on the Future Command Structure concept at the 46<sup>th</sup> SCM. Also, they determined the mid-2020s to be the estimated date for securing capabilities to meet the conditions for transition<sup>8</sup> as agreed by the ROK and the United States, and decided that the National Authorities of the two countries will make the final determination on the appropriate timing for the wartime OPCON transition based on the assessment of the conditions and SCM’s recommendation.

The ROK and the United States have decided to jointly develop a new strategic document prior to the 47<sup>th</sup> SCM in 2015 to replace the current SA 2015 in preparation for the future wartime OPCON transition. Furthermore, the two countries decided to maintain CFC headquarters, which was initially planned to be disestablished by December 1, 2015, at the current Yongsan Garrison with an appropriate level of personnel and facilities until the

---

6 The Commander is a U.S. general, while the Deputy Commander is a ROK general.

7 The Commander is a ROK general, while the Deputy Commander is a U.S. general.

8 1) To secure the military capabilities required to lead the ROK-U.S. combined defense after the wartime OPCON transition. The United States will continue to provide bridging and enduring capabilities, 2) To secure the essential response capabilities of the ROK forces against North Korean nuclear and missile threats at the early phases of local provocations and an aggression. The United States will provide and operate extended deterrence measures and strategic assets, 3) Security environment on the Korean Peninsula and in the region that is conducive to a stable wartime OPCON transition.

wartime OPCON transition.

The conditions-based wartime OPCON transition has the significance of designing the mid- to long-term future for the ROK-U.S. Combined Defense System. The ROK and the United States will pursue the implementation of the wartime OPCON transition in a direction that contributes to strengthening the ROK-U.S. combined defense capability while placing the utmost priority on deterring an aggression and local provocations by North Korea.

# Section 3 Expansion of Defense Diplomacy and Cooperation

The MND enhances peace and stability on the Korean Peninsula and in Northeast Asia by pursuing bilateral and multilateral cooperation with neighboring countries based on the ROK-U.S. Alliance. Also, the ROK contributes to the global peace by expanding the boundaries of defense diplomacy to Southeast Asia, the Middle East, Central and South America, and Africa, and by actively participating in multilateral security consultative bodies.

## 1. Enhancing Defense Exchanges and Cooperation with Neighboring Countries

**| Defense Exchanges and Cooperation with Japan |** The ROK and Japan share the basic values of liberal democracy and a market economy, and cooperate for the peace and prosperity of not only the Northeast Asia region, but also the world.

The two countries have periodically held defense minister-level meetings since 1994. In the 14<sup>th</sup> meeting in 2009, the two countries concluded the Letter of Intent on Defense Exchanges between the Republic of Korea and Japan. In the 15<sup>th</sup> meeting in 2011, the two countries agreed to enhance cooperation to respond to the North Korean provocations and for humanitarian disaster relief. In the Seoul Defense Dialogue (SDD) held in October 2014, the Vice Defense Ministers of the ROK and Japan met to exchange opinions on defense exchanges and cooperation between the two countries and agreed to keep making efforts for the stable development of the ROK-Japan relationship.



ROK-Japan Vice Defense Ministers' meeting (October 2014)

In addition, the two countries are widening their understanding of each other through defense policy talks, defense exchanges and cooperation talks, and security policy consultative meetings. Academic exchanges are also made periodically. In December 2013, the

eight Search and Rescue Exercise (SAREX) was conducted to enhance cooperation in the area of disaster relief.

However, some Japanese political leaders' regressive perception of history and unjust claim of dominion over Dokdo Island become obstacles to the future-oriented development of the relationship between the two countries.

The MND will stringently respond to Japan's unjust claims on Dokdo Island while continuously cooperating in major security issues, including North Korean nuclear threats, for the peace and stability of Northeast Asia.

**| Defense Exchanges and Cooperation with China |** The ROK and China have developed their relationship<sup>1</sup> in various areas, such as politics, economy, society, and culture, since the establishment of diplomatic relations in 1992. In particular, ever since the relationship was upgraded to a “strategic cooperative partnership” in May 2008, defense exchanges and cooperation between the two countries have been more active.

In June 2013, President Park Geun-hye reaffirmed the principle of zero tolerance toward North Korea's nuclear weapons in a ROK-China summit with President Xi Jinping, and ensured China's support for the ROK's policy towards North Korea. They have agreed to establish a comprehensive and multi-layered strategic communication channel in the political and security areas by adopting the “ROK-China Joint Statement for Future Vision.”

In June 2013, the Chairman of the ROK Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS) visited China to meet with the PLA Chief of General Staff of China. The Chairman of the ROK JCS visited the Chinese fleet and inspected the hotline by using a direct phone line between the navies of both countries.

In August 2013, using the ASEAN Defence Ministers' Meeting Plus (ADMM-Plus) as an opportunity, the ROK and Chinese Defense Ministers held a meeting. Both representatives shared that peace and stability on the Korean Peninsula will be impossible as long as North Korea possesses nuclear weapons, and they decided to continue on enhancing communication and cooperation for the stability of the region. During the third Defense Strategic Dialogue in November 2013, future-oriented defense exchanges and cooperation development measures, including a plan to expand military education and exchanges, were discussed based on the perception that exchanges between young officers are the foundation to improve defense and military relations for both countries. As a result, not only were language courses opened for the partner country, but ROK military officers were also sent to

---

<sup>1</sup> Friendly cooperative relationship (1992), Cooperative partnership (1998), Comprehensive cooperative relationship (2000), Comprehensive cooperative partnership (2003), Strategic cooperative partnership (2008), Mature strategic cooperative partnership (2014).

the Chinese Command and Staff College in 2014.

In July 2014, the two countries held a ROK-China summit in Seoul and laid out a way ahead to establish a “mature strategic cooperative partnership” through their joint statement. By maintaining the stable development of military relations between the two countries, they have decided to contribute



Signing the MOU for installing a direct phone line between the two Defense Ministries (July 2014)

to the peace and stability of the region based on mutual understanding and trust. In July of the same year, the two countries discussed a specific action plan regarding the issues agreed upon during the summit through the fourth Defense Strategic Dialogue held in Beijing. As a result, an MOU was concluded to install a direct phone line between the defense ministries of both countries, and mutual exchange visits of young officers from the ROK and China were carried out. During the ROK-China summit held in Beijing in November 2014, they agreed to pursue joint efforts for the denuclearization of North Korea.

Additionally, in 2014, ROK-China relations are being improved by expanding exchanges in various areas, such as the repatriation of Chinese soldiers’ remains, the first visiting performance of the Korean National Military Symphony to China, meetings between JCS strategic branches, exchange visits between ROK-China military athletic squads, and exchanges by military research and education institutes.

The ROK MND will strive to contribute to peace and stability on the Korean Peninsula and in Northeast Asia by continuously expanding defense exchanges and cooperation with China to satisfy the mature strategic cooperative partnership between the ROK and China.

**| Defense Cooperation with Russia |** Since the beginning of diplomatic relations in 1990, the relationship between the ROK and Russia<sup>2</sup> has improved in a wide array of areas such as politics, economy, energy, science and technology. Ever since the two countries’ relationship was elevated to a “strategic cooperative partnership” in 2008, the ROK and Russia have been strengthening their cooperation to resolve the North Korean nuclear issue and to enhance the substantive cooperation between the ROK and Russia through the Nuclear Security Summit in March 2012, the G20 Summit in September 2013, and the bilateral summit held in Seoul in November 2013.

After the ROK-Russia Defense Strategic Dialogue in March 2012, both countries shared an

---

<sup>2</sup> Constructive and mutually complementary partnership (1994), Comprehensive partnership of mutual trust (2004), Strategic cooperative partnership (2008).

understanding on the need for expanding military cooperation, and continue discussions to conclude a military cooperation agreement that can systematically support it.

In the ROK-Russia summit in 2013, both countries came to an understanding that active coordination to pursue defense technology cooperation is necessary, with the perception that bilateral defense technology cooperation



ROK-Russia Vice Defense Ministers' meeting (October 2013)

is an important mission to support the relationship between the two countries.

To enhance trust between the two countries, the ROK and Russia are expanding exchanges of senior-level personnel. In particular, the visit of the ROK Vice Minister of National Defense to Russia in October 2013 was the first military senior-level visit in four years, and was an opportunity to reinforce strategic communications regarding military cooperation.

In addition, through JCS chief director-level dialogue and joint military committee meetings, the two countries enhance mutual understanding, continue to develop their military cooperation relationship at the working level, and broaden the scope of their understanding through exchanges between units and commissioned education.

The ROK MND will develop the relationship between the two countries to one that can contribute to peace and stability on the Korean Peninsula and in Northeast Asia by expanding defense exchange cooperation with Russia and enhancing the friendship between the two countries.

## 2. Expanding Defense Exchanges and Cooperation with Key Countries in Each Region

**| Southeast Asia and Oceania |** The ROK MND actively pursues senior-level military exchanges, defense industry exports and cooperation with countries in Southeast Asia and Oceania.

President Park Geun-hye visited Vietnam in September 2013, and had a summit with Vietnamese President Truong Tan Sang. In this summit, the two Presidents agreed to enhance defense cooperation by regularly holding a defense strategic dialogue and expanding defense industry cooperation. In March 2014, cooperation enhancement measures with regard to new security issues such as defense industry cooperation expansion, and cyber security and peacekeeping operations were discussed in a ROK-Vietnam Defense Ministers' dialogue. In July of the same year, measures to vitalize defense exchanges and cooperation

and defense industry cooperation were discussed in the third ROK-Vietnam Defense Strategic Dialogue. In this meeting, a legal and systematic foundation for exchanges and cooperation which will actively progress between the two countries in the future was established by signing the ROK-Vietnam MOU on the Protection of Classified Military Information.

Taking the Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) summit in October 2013 as an opportunity, President Park Geun-hye visited Indonesia and held a summit with President Susilo Bambang Yudhoyono. The two Presidents discussed the smooth progress of current export projects such as Korean advanced trainers and submarines, and measures to expand defense industry cooperation between the two countries. In particular, by concluding the ROK-Indonesia Defense Cooperation Agreement, a systematic foundation for the national defense and defense industry cooperation of both countries was established.

The ROK and Philippines concluded the MOU on Defense Cooperation during President Benigno Aquino's visit to Korea in October 2013. Accordingly, in December 2013, the ROK Araw Contingent was deployed to support the Philippines in typhoon damage recovery, and 12 FA-50 light attack aircraft were exported to the Philippines in March 2014.

To expand the scope of defense diplomacy, defense exchanges and cooperation are expanded with the ASEAN countries, such as Myanmar, Cambodia, and Laos. In particular, during the ROK-Singapore Defense Strategic Dialogue in October 2013, support for the ROK's policy towards North Korea was reaffirmed, and both sides agreed to continue with maritime security cooperation, including the cooperation for counter-piracy activities in the Gulf of Aden in Somalia.

The first ROK-Australia Foreign and Defense Ministers' Meeting (2+2 meeting) in July 2013 upgraded the diplomacy and security cooperation with Australia to the next level. After the meeting, the two countries' Foreign and Defense Ministers presented a joint statement whose main contents were on holding the meeting biannually, and expanding bilateral and multilateral cooperation with major countries in the region. In the ROK-Australia summit in April 2014, the Vision Statement for a Safe, Peaceful and Prosperous Future between ROK and Australia was announced, thereby proposing a future way ahead for cooperation between the two countries in the areas of diplomacy and security. Also, in October 2014 in the third ROK-Australia Defense Ministers' meeting, both Ministers had a discussion regarding the vitalization of combined exercises and military education exchanges, cooperation in international peacekeeping operations, and defense industry cooperation. In the future, the two countries will strengthen mutual assistance to respond to issues on the Korean Peninsula and in the region, and put forward efforts to substantively cooperate in the areas of national defense and the defense industry.

To commemorate the 25<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the ROK-ASEAN dialogue relations, the

ROK-ASEAN Commemorative Summit was held in Busan in December 2014. By enhancing cooperation with the Southeast Asian countries that are members of ASEAN in the area of defense, the ROK actively takes part in joint efforts to safeguard the peace and stability in the region.

**| Southwest Asia |** The ROK government revitalizes its national defense and defense industry exchanges and cooperation with Southwest Asian nations such as India and Pakistan through Korea National Defense University graduate student exchange visits, commissioned education programs, and joint defense industry and logistics committees.

In January 2014, President Park Geun-hye visited India and held a summit with Indian Prime Minister Manmohan Singh. The two leaders agreed to pursue mutually beneficial defense industry cooperation and prepared to establish military confidence by concluding a General Security of Military Information Agreement (GSOMIA). After the inauguration of the government of Narendra Modi, using the East Asia Summit in November 2014 as an opportunity, the ROK and India decided to enhance defense cooperation in comprehensive areas, such as security, nuclear energy, the defense industry, and science and technology during a summit held in Myanmar.

The ROK MND will continuously pursue the exchanges of senior-level officials and regular meetings with Southwest Asian countries, expand understanding in areas of mutual interest, and elevate the level of cooperation to a more substantive one beyond the current level of exchanges.

**| Central Asia |** Most Central Asian countries became part of the Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS)<sup>3</sup> after achieving their independence from the former USSR. The Central Asian countries have achieved political stability and economic growth by reorganizing national systems for over 20 years after their independence, and their defense cooperation with the ROK has significantly improved after bilateral diplomatic relations were established.

The ROK and Kazakhstan concluded an MOU on Defense Exchanges and Cooperation in September 2010, and held defense policy talks in Astana, Kazakhstan in November 2011 and in Seoul in November 2012.

The ROK and Uzbekistan concluded an MOU on Defense Industry and Logistics Cooperation in February 2010 which strengthened cooperative relations by expanding the opportunities for ROK companies to enter the Uzbekistan defense industry market. A

---

<sup>3</sup> A total of 11 countries: Russia, Ukraine, Belarus, Moldova, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Turkmenistan, Tajikistan, and Kyrgyzstan.

General Security of Military Information Agreement (GSOMIA) was concluded in September 2012.

An MOU on Defense Exchanges and Cooperation was concluded with Azerbaijan in December 2013 to establish a foundation to enhance defense exchanges and cooperation.

Defense exchanges and cooperation have also been expanded with Mongolia in various areas, including personnel, education and academic exchanges, and participation in the Khaan Quest exercise.<sup>4</sup>

**| The Middle East |** The Middle East is a critical region for securing energy resources and for potential contracts for major national projects such as defense industry exports and reconstruction projects. As the importance of cooperation with Middle Eastern countries is increasing, national defense and defense industry cooperation is being expanded.

In February 2013, the ROK Defense Minister visited Saudi Arabia and established a foundation for defense cooperation by concluding the ROK-Saudi Arabia Defense Cooperation Agreement. In May 2013, the Commander of the Saudi Arabian Army visited Korea and discussed measures to expand military exchanges and cooperation for the two countries with the ROK Vice Defense Minister. In September, the representatives of the Ministry of National Guard of Saudi Arabia visited Korea, discussed measures with the ROK military, and visited the Special Warfare Command and defense industry companies.

In October 2013, the Vice Defense Minister of Libya attended the Seoul International Aerospace & Defense Exhibition (ADEX), discussed opening a Libyan military attaché office in Korea, and agreed to expand defense industry cooperation. It was also decided to conclude an MOU on Defense Industry and Logistics Cooperation.

As the recent security environment in the Middle East is worsening, major countries in the Gulf region such as the UAE, Qatar, Kuwait, Bahrain and Saudi Arabia desire to expand exchanges and cooperation with the ROK in the area of special warfare. The ROK also expands defense cooperation in many ways, such as transferring the ROK military's advanced systems through personnel exchanges.

**| Europe |** The ROK is developing amicable and cooperative relations with traditional friendly Western European nations to stably secure international support for security issues on the Korean Peninsula. Moreover, the ROK is substantively expanding defense cooperation with Eastern and Northern European nations.

In April 2013, Anders Fogh Rasmussen, the Secretary General of NATO, visited Korea and

---

<sup>4</sup> This was a bilateral exercise of the United States and Mongolia but became a multilateral exercise in 2006. The UN peacekeeping activity guidelines and standards are applied, and the UN standard exercise model is practiced.

expressed his intent to support the security policy of the ROK during a meeting with the ROK Defense Minister. In May, the Deputy Commander in Chief of Turkey visited Korea and reaffirmed the traditional friendship between the ROK and Turkey.

In particular, in 2013, talks with senior officials from numerous European nations took place on the occasion of various events, such as the ADEX and the Seoul Defense Dialogue (SDD). In October, when the President of Poland visited Korea, the Vice Defense Minister of Poland accompanied the President and signed the ROK-Poland Defense Cooperation Agreement. In November, the Defense Minister of Hungary visited Korea and discussed measures for defense industry cooperation.

In October 2014, taking the third SDD as an opportunity, the ROK exchanged opinions on global security issues, including the Korean Peninsula and Northeast Asia, with the Deputy Secretary General of NATO Alexander Vershbow and officials from the European Union's European External Action Service.

The ROK held regular defense policy talks with Germany and the United Kingdom in February and November 2014, respectively, to solidify the friendly and amicable relations with both countries.

In June 2013, the Defense Ministers of Norway and the ROK exchanged opinions regarding the Northern Sea Route. In September, the Vice Defense Minister of Finland visited Korea for the first time to commemorate the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the opening of ROK-Finland diplomatic relations and discussed measures for defense exchanges and cooperation with the ROK Vice Defense Minister. In December 2013, opinions regarding education exchanges and an MOU on Defense Industry and Logistics Cooperation were exchanged during the fourth ROK-Sweden defense policy talks.

**| Central and South America and Canada |** Since Central and South America and Canada are achieving continuous economic growth based on their abundant resources, exchanges and cooperation in the defense industry area are expected to be expanded.

During the second ROK-Columbia defense policy meeting in July 2013, the Vice Defense Ministers of the two countries agreed to proceed with cooperation in various areas such as cyber security, mine and explosives removal, and information exchanges regarding logistics.

In November 2013, the Defense Minister of Peru visited Korea to participate in the ROK-Peru Defense Ministers' dialogue and the first ROK-Peru defense policy meeting. His visit to Korea was more meaningful because it occurred on the 50<sup>th</sup> anniversary of diplomatic relations between the two countries. Both Defense Ministers agreed to develop national defense and defense industry cooperation, including the KT-1 aircraft export project.

During the 11<sup>th</sup> ROK-Canada defense policy meeting in January 2014, the security situation on the Korean Peninsula as well as humanitarian assistance and disaster relief, military

education and training exchanges, and cyber security cooperation measures were discussed.

The ROK MND will pursue diverse cooperation in the areas of defense and the defense industry with major countries in the region as a future-oriented partner.

**| Africa |** Africa is receiving much global attention as a supplier of natural and energy resources.

The ROK MND discussed measures to enhance national defense and defense industry cooperation with the Defense Minister and the Vice Defense Minister of Botswana when they visited Korea in October 2013 to attend the ADEX. In November 2013, the ROK defense cooperation agency visited Botswana to hold a working-level meeting for national defense and defense industry cooperation and materialized the discussion in detail. In February 2014, Botswana announced to the international community its intent to sever all diplomatic relations with North Korea by quoting the UN Report on Human Rights in North Korea.

The ROK MND will pursue the establishment of a foundation for defense exchanges and cooperation with major African countries while considering the internal situations of Africa and global views.

### **3. Multilateral Security Cooperation**

Various multilateral security cooperation activities are underway to establish peace and stability in the region through the enhancement of defense cooperation among the countries in the region. Currently, to induce the active participation of related countries, cooperation activities are being pursued starting in areas with common security interests in which it is comparatively easy to develop a common understanding on the need for cooperation. In particular, multilateral security cooperation is actively being developed centering around transnational and non-military security threats such as terrorism, piracy, and large-scale natural disasters.

Since 2013, the ROK MND has expanded its domain of multilateral security cooperation by attending the Halifax International Security Forum (HISF),<sup>5</sup> which is the largest multilateral security cooperation consultative group in North America, while actively participating in regional multilateral security cooperation activities to garner support for the security policy of the ROK. Chart 5-6 lists the Asia-Pacific multilateral security consultative meetings in which the MND participates.

---

<sup>5</sup> A security cooperative organization in which 50 countries and over 300 international security experts from governments and academia participate. It was first held in Halifax, Canada in 2009.

**Chart 5-6. Asia-Pacific Multilateral Security Consultative Meetings in Which the ROK MND Participates**

Government Level (track 1)	Semi-government Level (track 1.5)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ASEAN Defence Ministers' Meeting Plus (ADMM-Plus) and its subordinate consultative bodies</li> <li>• ASEAN Regional Forum (ARF)</li> <li>• Tokyo Defense Forum (TDF)</li> <li>• Northeast Asia Peace and Security Mechanism (NEAPSM) Working Group within the Six-Party Talks</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Seoul Defense Dialogue (SDD)</li> <li>• Asia Security Summit (ASS)</li> <li>• Jakarta International Defense Dialogue (JIDD)</li> <li>• Halifax International Security Forum (HISF)</li> <li>• Northeast Asia Cooperation Dialogue (NEACD)</li> </ul>

**| Seoul Defense Dialogue |** Since 2012, the ROK MND has held the Seoul Defense Dialogue (SDD), in which vice minister-level defense officials from the Asia Pacific region attend to build military confidence and improve the security environment of the Asia Pacific region, including the Korean Peninsula. The SDD discusses security issues that arise every year, with the slogan “Cooperation for Security and Peace.”

The second SDD was held from November 11 to 13, 2013. The number of participating countries increased by six compared to 2012 as 20 countries and three international organizations participated during the second SDD, and it contributed to peace on the Korean Peninsula by enhancing the understanding and cooperation of the international community towards the security situation on the Korean Peninsula.

The third SDD was held from October 29 to 31, 2014, and 24 countries and three international organizations participated. Under the key theme “From Conflict to Cooperation: Measures for Trust-building among Asia-Pacific Countries.” The third SDD was organized with five different agendas: The unification of the Korean Peninsula, conflict prevention, humanitarian assistance and disaster relief, maritime security, and cyber security. In particular in 2014, a Cyber Working Group was officially introduced to establish a foundation as a multilateral security cooperation dialogue platform in the area of cyber security in the Asia-Pacific region.

The success of the third SDD allowed the SDD to consolidate its stature as a multilateral security dialogue platform participated by vice defense minister-level officials of the Asia-Pacific region. In the future, it will enhance its role as a multilateral security consultative body in the domain of national security, including diplomacy and unification, by developing various agendas and expanding the number of nations invited.



Theme video of the Seoul  
Defense Dialogue

**| Asia Security Summit** | The ROK MND has been attending the Asia Security Summit (ASS),<sup>6</sup> the highest-level meeting for security in the Asia-Pacific region, every year since 2004. Through bilateral meetings with major countries such as the United States, the ROK Defense Minister discussed measures for national defense and defense industry cooperation and enhanced the international community's understanding of the situation on the Korean Peninsula. In the 12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> security summits held in 2013 and 2014, respectively, the ROK Defense Minister explained the security situation on the Korean Peninsula to the representatives of participating countries and secured the international community's support for the ROK government's policy towards North Korea.

**| ASEAN Defence Ministers' Meeting Plus** | The ROK Defense Minister has been attending the ASEAN Defence Ministers' Meeting Plus (ADMM-Plus) since it was first held in Hanoi, Vietnam in October 2010.

During the second ADMM-Plus in August 2013, the ROK Defense Minister emphasized the importance of multilateral security cooperation among countries in the region and the denuclearization of the Korean Peninsula under the theme of "the development of regional multilateral security cooperation and security situations on the Korean Peninsula." A document expressing the resolute will of the international community towards the "denuclearization of North Korea and compliance with the UN Security Council's resolutions" was unanimously adopted for the Chairman's statement; it was an opportunity to reaffirm the international community's resolve to denuclearize North Korea.

**| Other Multilateral Security Cooperative Meetings** | The ROK MND has been expanding its role in the ASEAN Regional Forum (ARF) since it started participation in 1996. The ROK co-chaired the ARF Inter-Sessional Meeting on Maritime Security with Indonesia from 2012 until 2014, and co-hosted the ARF Disaster Relief Exercise (DiREx) with Thailand in 2013.

The ROK MND is also participating in the Jakarta International Defense Dialogue (JIDD).<sup>7</sup> In March 2013, the Vice Chairman of the JCS attended the third JIDD and gave a speech on "evolving threats and challenges in Asia Pacific." The Vice Minister of the MND attended the fourth JIDD in March 2014 and gave a speech on the theme of "establishing maritime cooperation for security and stability."

---

6 A multilateral security dialogue that has been held in the Shangri-La Hotel in Singapore every year since 2002 by the International Institute for Strategic Studies. The Defense Ministers of 27 countries and international organizations in the APAC region and Europe participate.

7 A minister-level international defense meeting held every year in Jakarta, Indonesia. Currently, the ROK's Vice Defense Minister attends this dialogue.

Every year, the ROK also attends the Tokyo Defense Forum (TDF),<sup>8</sup> which is a director general-level security consultative meeting, and the Northeast Asia Cooperation Dialogue (NEACD),<sup>9</sup> which accepts countries that participate in the Six-Party Talks as its member countries, to explore measures for cooperation and military confidence-building among countries.

The defense cooperation that has been merely focusing on alliances and bilateral relationships centered on the Asia Pacific countries is expanding its scope to comprehensive multilateral security cooperation. By actively participating in multilateral security cooperation activities, the ROK government will share its position with other countries to maintain peace and stability on the Korean Peninsula and in Northeast Asia with related countries, and will keep putting forward effort to expand support for the ROK's security policies.

#### 4. International Non-proliferation and Counter-proliferation Activities

The international community strengthens the international regime to prevent the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (WMD), conventional weapons and their means of delivery. In March 2013, the UN adopted the Arms Trade Treaty (ATT)<sup>10</sup> to regulate the trade in conventional weapons across the entire world, and reinforces the export control of strategic items or commodities.<sup>11</sup> The ROK has been actively participating in the non-proliferation agreements and the multilateral export control system since its admission in the UN in 1991.

**| International Non-proliferation Activities |** The ROK government has fulfilled its responsibilities as a member of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (NPT) since its membership in 1975, and actively participates in the international community's efforts to prevent nuclear proliferation.

As a member country of the Chemical Weapons Convention (CWC), the ROK faithfully

<sup>8</sup> This is a director-level multilateral defense cooperative body held every year from 1996 in Tokyo by the Japan Ministry of Defense. In the TDF, measures for regional security cooperation are discussed to establish mutual trust and enhance military transparency.

<sup>9</sup> This is a defense dialogue hosted by the Institute on Global Conflict and Cooperation (IGCC) of the University of California, where defense and diplomacy officials and civil researchers attend from six Northeast Asian countries: the ROK, North Korea, the United States, Japan, China, and Russia.

<sup>10</sup> This is the only regulation with legal binding regarding international transactions of conventional weapons: the main subject is regulating tanks, armored vehicles, cannons, fighters, attack helicopters, battleships, missiles, small weapons, ammunition and their components.

<sup>11</sup> WMD and conventional weapons, and their transportation means, as well as all items, software, and technology that can be used to develop or manufacture such weapons.

observes its mandates and has provided joint international chemical protection education with the Organization for the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons (OPCW) since 2005. As of 2014, the ROK military has transferred its highly advanced chemical protection technology to 230 chemical protection officials from 54 Asian member states.

The ROK is also participating in the Wassenaar Arrangement<sup>12</sup> and the Arms Trade Treaty, which are multilateral export control systems on conventional weapons. However, taking into consideration the security situations of the existing military threats of North Korea, the ROK is not participating in the Anti-Personnel Mine Ban Convention (Ottawa Treaty) and the Convention on Cluster Munitions (CCM), which prohibit using mines and cluster munitions altogether. But since the ROK is in agreement with the humanitarian need for these agreements, it is participating in the Convention on Certain Conventional Weapons (CCW) and fulfilling the duties. The ROK is also actively participating in the humanitarian efforts of the global community by supporting the UN Voluntary Trust Fund for Assistance in Mine Action.

The ROK government will continuously contribute to international peace and security by complying with international regimes and observing mandates, such as domestic legislation of the Arms Trade Treaty, and by actively participating in the efforts of the international community for disarmament and non-proliferation.

**| International Counter-proliferation Activities |** In order to respond to potential biological threats on the Korean Peninsula, the ROK and the United States have conducted the annual “Able Response” exercise, which is a ROK-U.S. combined biological defense exercise, since 2011. In 2014, a tabletop exercise, functional exercise, and senior-level seminar were conducted with 50 related institutions of the ROK and United States. Through the Able Response exercise, the ROK has inspected the national integrated response system against biological threats, and greatly improved the combined biological defense capabilities by actively complementing areas in need of refinement.

The ROK government officially became a member of the Proliferation Security Initiative (PSI) in May 2009 in order to actively participate in the international endeavor to prevent the proliferation of WMD. The PSI was founded in 2003 by the United States, and 104 countries are participating as of September 2014.

In 2010 and 2012, the ROK hosted the PSI exercises; discussed the prevention of WMD proliferation, seizures and disposal; and conducted maritime interdiction training. The ROK has been continuously participating in the international cooperation activities by attending the PSI exercise held by the UAE in 2013 and the United States in 2014.

---

<sup>12</sup> A multilateral export control system to control transfers of conventional weapons, and dual-use items and technology.

## Section 4 Contributing to World Peace through Overseas Deployments

The ROK, after overcoming the tragedy of the Korean War with the support of the UN and the international community, has developed into a donor country and is a middle power that actively participates in peacekeeping operations (PKOs) through economic growth and democratization.

As of September 2014, the ROK is contributing to world peace as a responsible member of the international community through various PKOs by deploying approximately 1,400 personnel to UN peacekeeping operations, peace operations of multinational forces, and defense cooperation activities.<sup>1</sup>

### 1. Participation in UN Peacekeeping Operations

UN peacekeeping operations began with the establishment of the United Nations Truce Supervision Organization (UNTSO) in Palestine in 1948. UN mission groups are deployed to troubled regions in every corner of the world to perform their missions of truce supervision and reconstruction aid.

The ROK joined the UN in September 1991, and has been continuously participating in UN peacekeeping operations since it deployed an engineering unit to Somalia in 1993. As of September 2014, 636 personnel are executing their missions in UN peacekeeping operations. Please refer to Chart 5-7 for the current status.

**| Dongmyeong Unit<sup>2</sup> in Lebanon |** The Syrian military and Israeli military were deployed

1 Comparison among different PKOs

Category	UN PKO	Peace Operations of Multinational Forces	Defense Cooperation Activities
Host	Led directly by the UN	Led by a regional security organization or particular nation	Led by the dispatching country
Command and Control	PKF Commander appointed by the UN Secretary General	MNF Commander	Military commander of the dispatching country
Expenses	Reimbursement by the UN	Borne by participating countries	Borne by the dispatching country

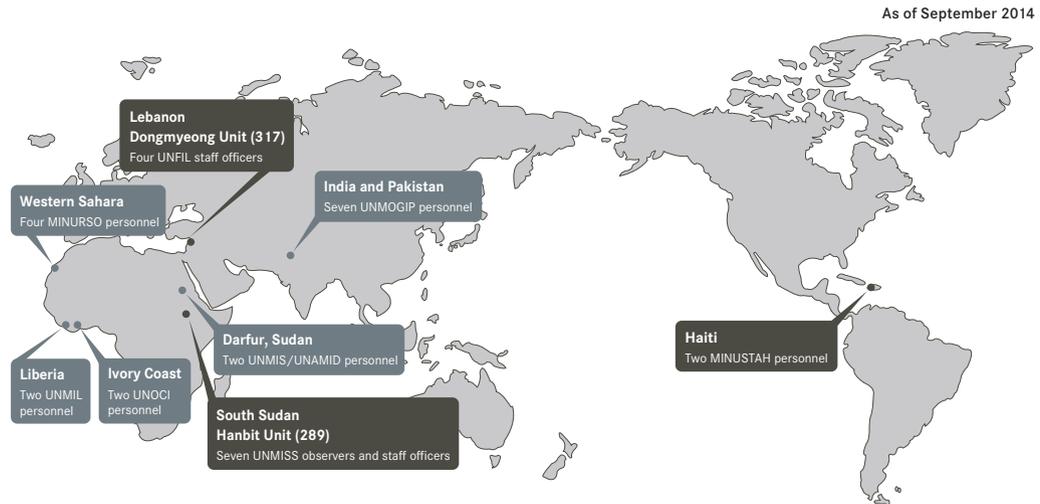


ROK armed forces overseas deployment promotional video

2 “Dongmyeong,” named after King Dongmyeong, the founder of Goguryeo, means “bright light from the east” and signifies the hope of a bright future and peace.

and stationed in Lebanon to resolve the civil war between the Christians and Muslims in Lebanon in 1975. When the civil war did not subside, the UN installed the United Nations Interim Force in Lebanon (UNIFIL) based on a Security Council resolution in 1978, and the UNIFIL started its mission of truce supervision for Lebanon and Israel.

**Chart 5-7. ROK Participation in UN Peacekeeping Operations**



In 2006, as the confrontation between Israel and Hezbollah in the southern part of Lebanon worsened, the UN significantly increased the number of peacekeeping forces from 2,000 to 15,000 and requested more participation from member countries in August 2006.

In July 2007, with the consent of the National Assembly, the ROK government deployed a peacekeeping unit (the Dongmyeong Unit) consisting of 350 troops to Tyre in the southern part of Lebanon to conduct the mission of truce supervision for Israel and Lebanon.



Surveillance activity on a fixed guard post

In addition to truce supervision activities, the Dongmyeong Unit engages in multi-functional civil-military operations called the Peace Wave<sup>3</sup> and in humanitarian assistance. The major activities of the Dongmyeong Unit are listed in Chart 5-8.

<sup>3</sup> Activities such as renovating old school buildings, building and repairing roads, and medical support for local residents.

**Chart 5-8. Major Activities of the Dongmyeong Unit**

As of September 2014

Operational Activities	Civil-Military Operations	Military Diplomacy
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Surveillance and reconnaissance of operational areas: 26,444 times</li> <li>• Combined reconnaissance with the Lebanese military: 4,475 times</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Medical support for local residents: 73,941 people</li> <li>• Treatment of livestock: For 16,872 animals</li> <li>• Computer, Korean, Taekwondo, and sewing classes: Five towns</li> <li>• Locally demanded projects: 188 projects (public facilities, school facilities, sewage facilities, etc.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Exchange activities with UNIFIL countries: 463 times</li> </ul>

**| Hanbit Unit<sup>4</sup> in South Sudan |** After Sudan gained independence from the United Kingdom and Egypt, a civil war started between South and North Sudan in 1955 due to political and religious reasons. After two peace agreements, South Sudan became independent from Sudan in July 2011. The UN installed the United Nations Mission in the Republic of South Sudan (UNMISS) and requested its member countries to contribute troops.

After receiving the consent of the National Assembly in September 2012, the ROK government organized the ROK Horizontal Military Engineering Company (Hanbit Unit), which is an engineering unit of 280 troops, in January 2013. The Hanbit Unit was deployed to South Sudan on March 31, 2013.<sup>5</sup>



Road repair work

The Hanbit Unit is successfully conducting reconstruction support activities such as the construction and repair of roads, airports, and bridges, and humanitarian assistance missions such as refugee protection and drinking water supply and medical support in the Bor region which was devastated by the civil war. The major activities are listed in Chart 5-9.

**Chart 5-9. Major Activities of the Hanbit Unit**

As of September 2014

Reconstruction Aid Operations	Civil-Military Operations	Refugee Protection
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Expansion of the Bor Airport parking ramp (410 m×110 m)</li> <li>• Bor Airport runway repair (50 m×15 m, two sites)</li> <li>• Construction of the Bor Airport helicopter airfield (70 m×70 m)</li> <li>• Road repairs in Bor (32 km)</li> <li>• Construction of a landfill and sewage treatment plant in Bor (50 m×50 m, three sites)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Medical support: 3,700 people</li> <li>• Construction of impermeable walls along the White Nile River: 17 km</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Construction of a refugee center: 500 m×500 m</li> <li>• Treatment of gunshot wound patients: 819 people</li> <li>• Support for medicine, preventive care, water supply, and waste disposal</li> </ul>

4 The name “hanbit” means “bright and big light leading the world” through humanitarian activities and reconstruction support for South Sudan.

5 The deployment to South Sudan is the seventh UN PKO deployment following previous deployments to Somalia, Western Sahara, Angola, East Timor, Lebanon, and Haiti.



Hanbit Unit promotional video

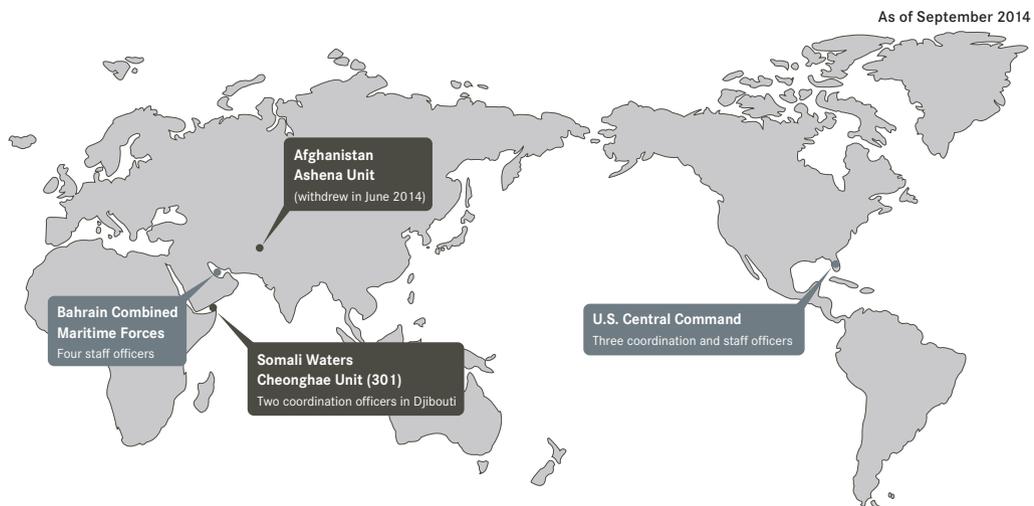
**| Activities of Observers and Staff Officers in UN Missions |** The ROK government has dispatched more than 30 observers and staff officers to UN missions in major areas of conflict, including India and Pakistan, Lebanon, South Sudan, Western Sahara, and Haiti. Observers monitor armistice violations and conduct missions in patrols, investigations, reporting, and mediation, under the control of Missions. Staff officers perform their missions in major staff offices such as intelligence, operations, logistics, etc. In June 2012, an ROK Army general officer became the third Korean head of the United Nations Military Observer Group in India and Pakistan (UNMOGIP), and carried out his duties until June 2014.

## 2. Peace Operations of Multinational Forces

Peace operations of multinational forces (MNF) are peace activities performed by multinational forces led by a regional security organization or a certain country based on a UN Security Council resolution, and others. Together with UN peacekeeping operations, MNF peace operations play an important role in the stabilization and reconstruction of troubled regions.

As of late September 2014, the ROK has 310 personnel dispatched for MNF peace operations. The current status is as shown in Chart 5-10.

**Chart 5-10. ROK Participation in Peace Operations of Multinational Forces**



**| Cheonghae Unit in the Somali Waters |** As the amount of damage from piracy near the waters of Somalia has increased significantly since 2004 due to the civil war in Somalia, the

UN decided to deploy military vessels and aircraft to the region and requested participation from its member countries. The ROK government dispatched the Cheonghae Unit to the Gulf of Aden off Somalia in March 2009 with the consent of the National Assembly.

The Cheonghae Unit's major missions are to support the safe activities of ROK ships, participate in the maritime security operations of the Combined Maritime Forces (CMF), and protect citizens of the ROK in contingencies. It is composed of one destroyer, one helicopter, three rigid hull inflatable boats (RHIBs), and 301 troops as of September 2014.



Rescue operation for Korean nationals in Libya

The Cheonghae Unit successfully executed “Operation Dawn of Gulf of Aden” in January 2011 when the unit rescued a ROK ship and its crew that were hijacked by pirates. In March 2011 and August 2014, the unit successfully executed evacuation operations for ROK nationals in Libya by safely evacuating ROK nationals and other foreigners to nearby countries when the political situation in Libya became unstable. Such accomplishments raised the status of the ROK's armed forces in the world. From June to August 2014, an ROK Navy flag officer commanded the CTF-151, a multinational task force under the CMF in Bahrain. This was the third time to have a ROK Navy officer serve as the Commander of the CTF-151, and it was an opportunity to internationally demonstrate the excellence of the ROK Navy. The major activities are shown in Chart 5-11.

Chart 5-11. Major Activities of the Cheonghae Unit

As of September 2014

Convoy Missions		Support for Safe Voyage		Maritime Security Operations	Counter-piracy Missions
ROK vessels	Foreign vessels	ROK vessels	Foreign vessels		
418	1,507	5,905	2,594	238 times, 486 days	21 times, 31 vessels

**| Ashena Unit<sup>6</sup> in Afghanistan |** Public security in Afghanistan deteriorated significantly due to indiscriminate terrorism by the Taliban groups following the removal of the Taliban government in 2001. Consequently, the UN established the International Security Assistance Force (ISAF) to support the stabilization and reconstruction of Afghanistan, and urged its

6 The name “ashena” means “friend” or “companion” in the Afghanistan Dari language.

member countries to support it by providing personnel and equipment.

Against this backdrop, in October 2009, the ROK government announced its plan to deploy a Provincial Reconstruction Team (PRT) and security unit. Accordingly, with the consent of the National Assembly in February 2010, the ROK government deployed the Afghanistan reconstruction support team (Ashena Unit) of approximately 350 troops to Parwan Province in July 2010 to support the safe reconstruction missions of the ROK PRT. The major duties of the Ashena Unit were to protect the activities of the ROK PRT and its base.

The ROK PRT successfully accomplished its missions in the areas of public health and medicine after its deployment in 2010. In recognition of the efforts put in by the ROK PRT, the Afghanistan government and the local residents call the ROK PRT “Korean brothers of Afghanistan,” and praised the ROK PRT highly for its exemplary reconstruction activities. The Ashena Unit protected the reconstruction activities of the PRT seamlessly without any loss or damage during more than 1,800 escort and surveillance operations.



PRT escort operation

The Ashena Unit fully withdrew in late June 2014 along with the PRT when their activities were completed in the first half of 2014. The major activities of the Ashena Unit are as shown in Chart 5-12.

**Chart 5-12. Major Activities of the Ashena Unit**

As of June 2014, withdrawn at the end of June 2014

Operational Activities	Civil-military Operations	Military Diplomacy
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Escort and surveillance activities to ensure off-post activities of the PRT: 1,812 times</li> <li>• Guarding the Bagram base (base camp of the PRT) and the ROK Embassy in Kabul, Afghanistan</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Events for residents from local towns around the base : 10 towns</li> <li>• Giving children’s goods while performing off-post operations: Toy cars, shoes, etc.</li> <li>• Sisterhood relationship with the Parwan Province youth soccer team and goods support: 305 items of 15 kinds, including uniforms</li> <li>• Donation for incurable disease patients in the ROK hospital in Afghanistan</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Exchange activities with allied forces and Afghanistan military: visits (40 times), tactical discussions (27 times)</li> <li>• ROK-U.S. combined integrated fire exercise: One to two times a month</li> </ul>

**| Staff and Coordination Officers in Multinational Forces |** The ROK military has dispatched a total of 10 staff and coordination officers to the CMF in Bahrain, the Combined Joint Task Force-Horn of Africa (CJTF-HOA) in Djibouti, and the U.S. Central Command in order to support unit-level multinational force deployment activities. Their major missions are performing staff duties for the CMF, establishing combined operational plans, supporting

the rotation and combat service of the ROK military overseas deployment units, and cooperating with local allied forces.

### 3. Defense Cooperation Activities

Defense cooperation activities include defense exchange cooperation activities in the noncombatant arena such as education and training, humanitarian assistance, and disaster relief, by deploying the ROK forces to non-conflict areas where there is no risk of battle and safety is secured for the service members based upon a request from a certain country. This is a new form of deployment that is different from UN peacekeeping operations or MNF peace operations. As of late September 2014, a total of 447 ROK personnel are conducting defense cooperation activities. The defense cooperation activity participation status is as shown in Chart 5-13.

Chart 5-13. ROK Participation in Defense Cooperation Activities



**| Akh Unit<sup>7</sup> in the United Arab Emirates |** The United Arab Emirates regards the ROK's education and training systems and advanced defense capabilities very highly. The UAE

7 The name "akh" means "brothers" in Arabic to give a friendly feeling to the UAE citizens.



Akh Unit promotional video

military requested the deployment of ROK forces in August 2010 to improve their education and training standards and advance their defense structure by benchmarking the ROK military. Accordingly, in January 2011, the ROK government deployed the UAE Military Training Cooperation Group (Akh Unit) with approximately 150 troops to Abu Dhabi.



Combined high-altitude low opening training with the UAE forces

The Akh Unit provides education and training to the UAE special warfare units, conducts combined exercise and training with the UAE forces and protects ROK citizens in contingencies. The Akh Unit succeeded in improving the operation execution capabilities of the UAE special warfare units by concentrating on training the UAE forces in their areas of weakness such as counter-terrorism marksmanship, infiltration techniques and physical training. Also, through desert training in high temperatures and a dry environment that our forces cannot experience in the ROK as well as training using the high-tech facilities and equipment of the UAE military, the ROK military’s capabilities for combined special operations in the Middle East have improved a great deal.

The ROK and UAE have engaged in active exchanges and cooperation in various defense areas since the deployment of the Akh Unit. In particular, with mutual visits of representatives from various areas of the army, navy, and air force, including special warfare training, the two countries establish military confidence. Their major activities are as shown in Chart 5-14.

**Chart 5-14. Major Activities of the Akh Unit**

As of September 2014

Enhancement of UAE Military Capabilities	Enhancement of ROK Military Capabilities	Expansion of Defense Exchanges
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contributing to the advancement of UAE forces through improvement of their special warfare capabilities</li> <li>• Improving the education and training system of the UAE military</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Utilizing the high-tech facilities and equipment of the UAE military</li> <li>• Reinforcing survival capabilities in harsh conditions (high temperatures of above 50 °C in desert)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Teaching education and training systems such as candidate and refresher education for the three services</li> <li>• Expansion of commissioned education for UAE officers and education commissioning for the ROK forces in the three services' education system</li> <li>• Treating UAE military patients in domestic civilian hospitals through medical cooperation</li> <li>• Establishing a hub for defense diplomacy including defense industry export cooperation in the Middle East</li> </ul>

**| Araw Contingent<sup>8</sup> in the Philippines |** In November 2013, many parts of the Philippines

<sup>8</sup> The name “araw” means “the sun” in Tagalog. It signifies giving hope to the Philippines citizens.

were devastated by Typhoon Haiyan resulting in tens of thousands of casualties and a few million flood victims. In December 2013, in response to an official request from the Philippine government, the ROK government dispatched the Joint Support Group for the Philippines (Araw Contingent) composed of approximately 530 troops, including an engineering unit and medical unit, upon the consent of the National Assembly.



Typhoon damage restoration support in the Philippines

The Araw Contingent is the first ROK unit dispatched based on a request by a disaster-stricken country, and not on a request by a UN peacekeeping force or multinational force. Also, it is the first joint unit to be deployed that includes the Army, Navy, Air Force, and Marine Corps. It conducts missions that include reorganizing disaster areas, restoring public facilities, providing medical support, carrying out disease control activities, operating a heavy equipment vocational school, and carrying out activities to spread pro-Korea sentiment in Tacloban where the typhoon damage was the worst.

Among Asian countries, the Philippines was the first country to send combat troops when the Korean War began, and the deployment of the Araw Contingent shows goodwill to return the favor to the Philippines.

The Araw Contingent is fully focused on restoration activities under the slogan “Repaying the Sacrifice Made in Blood with Our Sweat Drops.” It helps Korea to be recognized as “a country that helps with a sincere heart” by the Philippine government and people, and was praised as “a successful example of disaster relief activities” by the UN and other international organizations. The Araw Contingent is scheduled to withdraw in December 2014 after successfully completing its missions of normalizing the local functions earlier than scheduled and providing disaster relief support. Its major activities are as shown in Chart 5-15.

**Chart 5-15. Major Activities of the Araw Contingent**

As of September 2014

Restoration of Public Facilities	Medical Support	Operation of a Vocational School	Pro-Korea Activities
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 28 schools, 13 public facilities, six hospitals/social service facilities, four war veterans' houses</li> <li>• Removing wreckage of 19,600 tons, disposing of 254 collapsed utility poles, and demolishing facilities that could collapse</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Treating approximately 30,000 patients (surgery, internal medicine, neurosurgery, dentistry, etc.), and disease control activities (500 times)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 379 people finished the courses (excavator, dozer, loader, forklift, crane, etc.) in eight classes</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Free meals for approx. 46,000 people</li> <li>• Korean classes (for elementary and high schools, and adults)</li> </ul>

**| Maritime Search Support for Missing Malaysian Aircraft |** After a Malaysian aircraft with 239 passengers on board disappeared in March 2014, Malaysia requested support from friendly nations to search for the aircraft wreckage. More than 10 countries, including the United States, the UK, Japan, China, and Australia, participated in the search operation based on humanitarianism. The ROK government deployed a maritime search support unit for the missing Malaysian aircraft consisting of one Navy P-3 aircraft, one Air Force C-130 aircraft, and 39 personnel to Malaysia on March 15, 2014.

As the aircraft was later found to have crashed into the Indian Ocean southwest of Australia, the wreckage search operation was shifted to that area. The ROK forces participated in the operation led by Australia, and performed maritime search missions for 196 hours in a total of 21 flights before their return on May 2.

Even though they did not discover any wreckage of the missing aircraft in the maritime search operation, the ROK forces, despite their short preparation period, performed their tasks admirably in the prolonged, overseas multinational search operation.

**| Deployment of Military Medical Personnel to Respond to the Ebola Outbreak |** As the spread of the Ebola virus raised the international urgency of deploying medical personnel to prevent its spread, the ROK government decided to dispatch a medical team consisting of civil and military medical personnel.

The ROK military dispatched the military medical personnel along with the civilian medical personnel to Sierra Leone, which is one of the countries that are most severely affected by the outbreak in West Africa. The deployment period is from December 2014 to March 2015. A military medical team of five personnel (two medical officers and three nursing officers) will be dispatched three times, which makes the total number of personnel 15.

#### **4. Expanding the Foundation for Participation in PKOs**

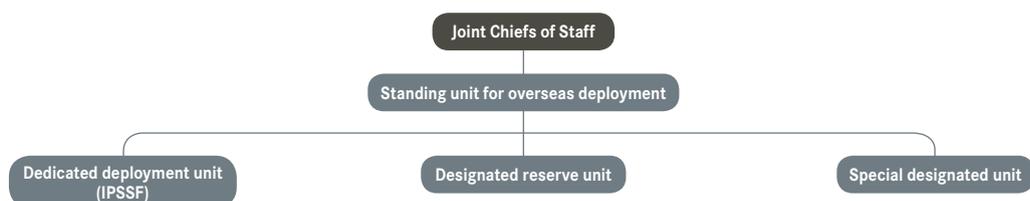
The ROK military contributes to promote world peace and improve the status of the ROK and its national stature through participation in PKOs. It also exerts its efforts to expand its participation in PKOs by establishing a legal and systematic foundation for PKOs and expanding its role in multilateral security consultative bodies.

**| Establishing a Legal Basis for Overseas Deployments |** In January 2010, the ROK government legislated the United Nations Peacekeeping Operations Participation Act to establish a legal basis to pursue deployments for UN peacekeeping operations more

efficiently. However, there is still no clear legal basis for the peacekeeping operations of multinational forces and defense cooperation activities. A legislative bill to establish a legal basis for various overseas deployment activities, the bill for “the Act on the Armed Forces’ Participation in Overseas Deployment Activities,” was proposed in June 2013, and it is being deliberated by the National Assembly. When this bill is legislated, the procedure and contents of the ROK’s overseas deployment will be more clearly specified, and it is expected to increase the transparency and predictability of overseas deployment activities.

**| Operation of a Standing Unit for Overseas Deployment |** Since December 2009, a standing unit for overseas deployment of approximately 3,000 troops has been in operation so that deployment can take place within one or two months after any PKO mission is granted. The standing unit consists of a dedicated deployment unit, a designated reserve unit, and special designated unit, each consisting of approximately 1,000 troops. The dedicated deployment unit is the first one to prepare for deployment in the event a need for deployment arises. In July 2010, the International Peace Support Standby Force (IPSSF, Onnuri Unit)<sup>9</sup> was established to serve as a unit solely devoted to overseas deployment. The designated reserve unit prepares for the rotation of deployed personnel or additional deployment, and the special designated unit prepares for various deployment requirements. The structure of the standing unit for overseas deployment is shown in Chart 5-16, and the number of deployed personnel is in Chart 5-17.

**Chart 5-16. Structure of the Standing Unit for Overseas Deployment**



\* Special designated unit : Engineering, medical, military police, guard (Marine Corps), transportation (Navy and Air Force), UAV, helicopter units

**Chart 5-17. Number of Personnel Deployed from the Standing Unit**

2010 - September 2014

Dongmyeong Unit	Ashena Unit	Akh Unit	Total
1,667 (11 camps)	320 (8 camps)	492 (8 camps)	2,479

<sup>9</sup> In the name “onnuri,” “on” means whole and “nuri” means the world where everybody lives. This name signifies a unit that performs its missions all over the world.

**| Reinforcing the Functions of the PKO Center |** The PKO Center is a dedicated education organization for PKOs, and was installed at the Joint Staff College in August 1995. In January 2010, the ROK MND changed the affiliation of the PKO Center to the Korea National Defense University, and reinforced the functions of education and research.

The PKO Center is exclusively responsible for providing pre-deployment education to the key officers of a deployed unit and individually dispatched personnel, and conducts commissioned education for overseas deployed police officers. Once the mission of the deployed unit or individually deployed personnel is completed, the PKO Center publishes and distributes to the relevant offices a booklet on the lessons learned from the deployment and after-action reports.

In November 2013, the UN staff course of the PKO Center acquired an education certificate from the UN's Department of Peacekeeping Operations (DPKO), obtaining universal recognition for the educational expertise of the center.

The PKO Center will gradually expand its functions and roles to systematically support research, education, and training for the ROK's PKOs. The number of the personnel who have been trained in the PKO Center is shown in Chart 5-18.

**Chart 5-18. Number of the Personnel Trained in the PKO Center**

As of September 2014

UN PKO	Multinational Forces	Others	Total
1,398 (5 programs )	59 (3 programs )	798 (3 programs )	2,255

**| Co-chair of ASEAN Defence Ministers' Meeting Plus Experts' Working Group on Peacekeeping Operations |** The ROK is the co-chair for the ASEAN Defence Ministers' Meeting Plus (ADMM-Plus) Experts' Working Group on Peacekeeping Operations (EWG on PKO)<sup>10</sup> from 2014 to 2016 along with Cambodia.

In September 2014, an EWG on PKO was held in Seoul, where current issues of the UN Department for Peacekeeping Operations were discussed. The participants visited the ROK IPSSF and were introduced to its training system. Also, practical cooperation measures among the member countries were discussed during the meeting.

In the future, the ROK, as the co-chair of the EWG on PKO, will put in efforts to reinforce

<sup>10</sup> There are six Experts' Working Groups on peacekeeping operations, counter-terrorism, maritime security, military medicine, humanitarian assistance and disaster relief, and humanitarian mine action. One ASEAN country and one plus country assume the role of co-chairs.

the capabilities of member countries and to establish a practical cooperative mechanism among the member countries. Along with existing deployment activities, the ROK will continue to increase its role in multilateral security consultative bodies.

# Chapter 6

## Military Measures and Readiness in Accordance with the Changing Inter-Korean Relationship



Section 1 Military Support to Advance the Trust-building Process on the Korean Peninsula 158

Section 2 Ensuring Inter-Korean Exchanges and Cooperation, and Providing Humanitarian Assistance 164



ROK Army's night patrol at the fences

# Section 1 Military Support to Advance the Trust-building Process on the Korean Peninsula

---

The ROK government promotes the trust-building process on the Korean Peninsula, pursuing the steady development of the inter-Korean relationship by building trust between South and North Korea based on robust national security. However, there has been no significant progress in building inter-Korean military confidence due to the continuous threats and provocations by North Korea. The Ministry of National Defense (MND) makes efforts to establish sustainable peace through the military's support for the establishment of the DMZ World Eco-Peace Park and the improvement of the arms control policy. It also prepares for unification by cultivating professional unification experts. When inter-Korean relations improve in the future, the MND will keep pace with the exchanges and cooperation and gradually take measures to build inter-Korean military confidence.

---

## 1. Military Confidence Building in Consideration of the Improvement of Inter-Korean Relationship

The ROK government promotes the trust-building process on the Korean Peninsula in order to improve the inter-Korean relationship, establish peace on the Korean Peninsula, and set the foundation for unification by building trust between South and North Korea based on robust national security. The ROK military provides military support for the government's policy toward North Korea. However, despite the ROK's efforts, there has been no significant progress in inter-Korean trust-building due to the various threats and military provocations continuously posed by North Korea.

Prior to the inauguration of the Park Geun-hye administration, North Korea launched a long-range missile on December 12, 2012 and pushed ahead with its third nuclear test on February 12, 2013. In March of 2013, North Korea declared that it would abolish the Armistice Agreement and the Inter-Korean Non-Aggression Agreement and nullify the Joint



Promotional video for the trust-building process on the Korean Peninsula

Declaration of the Denuclearization of the Korean Peninsula, using the Key Resolve (KR) exercise and Foal Eagle (FE) training as a pretext. As a follow-up measure, North Korea severed the Panmunjom hotline as well as the inter-Korean military communication lines. In April, North Korea continued to heighten the tension, as it withdrew all of its workers from the Kaesong Industrial Complex and put a halt to its operation. In spite of these provocations by North Korea, the ROK government adhered to the consistent principles of the trust-building process on the Korean Peninsula while in close cooperation with the international community, and urged North Korea to behave appropriately. Meanwhile, North Korea attempted to turn to appeasement through a visit by Choe Ryong-hae, the Director of the General Political Bureau, to China in May as a special envoy. Through seven working-level talks between the respective authorities after the shutdown of the Kaesong Industrial Complex, South and North Korea agreed to reconnect the inter-Korean military communication line in the western corridor starting from September 6, 2013 and also normalize the Kaesong Industrial Complex starting from September 16, 2013. South and North Korea set up the Inter-Korean Joint Committee for the Kaesong Industrial Complex to continue to discuss major policies and issues regarding the operation of the complex.

In 2014, North Korea called for the improvement of the inter-Korean relationship in a New Year's address. It continued to make a series of peace offensives, including a "significant proposal" by the National Defense Commission (NDC) made on January 16, 2014, senior-level inter-Korean talks held on February 12 and 14, a separated families' reunion event held from February 20 to 25, the NDC's "special proposal" on June 30, which repeated the terms of the "significant proposal," and a North Korean government statement made on July 7. However, North Korea conducted the provocation-dialogue tactics which carry out peace offensives, threats and provocations at the same time. North Korea launched short-range missiles onto the East Sea on February 21 while the separated families' reunion event was taking place, and persistently fired 270 short- and intermediate-range missiles since February. In addition, North Korea infiltrated small UAVs, threatened to conduct a fourth nuclear test, and demanded for the abandonment of the ROK-U.S. combined exercises.

Although North Korea appeared to take a proactive attitude towards the improvement of the inter-Korean relationship through the Incheon Asian Games, it maintained its dual policy by posing threats and provocations at the same time. It sent Hwang Pyong-so, the Director of the General Political Bureau, Choe Ryong-hae and Kim Yang-gon, the Secretaries of the Korean Workers' Party, to the ROK to attend the closing ceremony of the Incheon Asian Games. They also had a luncheon meeting with the senior ROK officials, including Kim Kwan-jin, the Director of National Security. They agreed to hold a second round of senior-level inter-Korean talks at the end of October or beginning of November. However, a naval engagement broke out on October 7, when a North Korean patrol boat violated the

Northern Limit Line (NLL) in the West Sea. On October 10, North Korean soldiers fired anti-aircraft guns at the balloons released by the ROK's civic organizations in Yeoncheon, and some of the rounds fell on ROK military camps and civilian residential areas. North Korea used this incident as a pretext to propose "exclusive emergency talks" with Kim Kwan-jin, the Director of National Security; however, the ROK government responded with a revised proposal to hold "senior-level inter-Korean military talks."

On October 15, 2014, a senior-level inter-Korean military talk was held at the Peace House in Panmunjom. The ROK delegation was headed by Yoo Jeh-seung, the Deputy Minister for Policy, MND, and the North Korean delegation was represented by Kim Yong-chol, the Chief Secretary of the NDC Secretariat and Director of the Reconnaissance General Bureau. North Korea



Senior-level inter-Korean military talk (October 2014)

raised issues such as the prevention of clashes in the West Sea and sending leaflets into North Korea by the ROK civic organizations, while the ROK government emphasized that North Korea respect and adhere to the NLL and highlighted North Korea's responsibility for the attack against the ROK Ship *Cheonan* and shelling of Yeonpyeongdo Island. Also, the ROK proposed to open an inter-Korean military hotline. The meeting ended without any results as North Korea claimed that the ROK government refused the proposals.

On October 16, 2014, the day after the senior-level inter-Korean military talk, North Korea disclosed the meeting results in a distorted way through a public report by the Korean Central News Agency (KCNA) and shifted the blame for the strained inter-Korean relationship to the ROK government. Additionally, on October 18 and 19, North Korea heightened the military tension not only by violating the Military Demarcation Line (MDL) in the Demilitarized Zone (DMZ) on the western and central fronts in spite of the ROK military's warning, but also by even firing guns towards the ROK. Eventually, North Korea rejected the second round of senior-level inter-Korean talks, citing the balloon releases conducted by the ROK civic organizations as an excuse, and continues to threaten and condemn the ROK.

The ROK government makes it clear that North Korea cannot gain anything through threats and provocations, while consistently promoting the trust-building process on the Korean Peninsula which helps build trust through dialogue and cooperation. The ROK will continue to drive the trust-building process on the Korean Peninsula to encourage North Korea to make the right choice and cease threats and military provocations against the ROK. The ROK military will establish a robust defense posture to deter North Korean

provocations. On the other hand, it will take gradual measures to ease the military tension and build inter-Korean trust, while keeping pace with inter-Korean exchanges and cooperation in a mutually complementary manner once the conditions are set.

## 2. Support for the Establishment of the DMZ World Eco-Peace Park<sup>1</sup>

The DMZ was established in accordance with the Armistice Agreement concluded on July 27, 1953 to avoid military collision between South and North Korea. However, due to the military confrontation between South and North Korea, the DMZ has turned into one of the most heavily armed areas in the world, packed with various military facilities, heavy weapons, landmines, etc.

The ROK government promotes the establishment of the DMZ World Eco-Peace Park to create a space where we could foster peace and trust by transforming a certain portion of the DMZ into a park and opening it to South and North Korean residents and also to the world.

President Park Geun-hye announced the “DMZ World Peace Park Project” for the first time in her speech at the joint session of the United States Congress on May 8, 2013 and again mentioned the necessity for driving this project when she announced the “Initiative for Peaceful Unification on the Korean Peninsula” in Dresden, Germany on March 28, 2014. She proposed the establishment of the park to North Korea in her address on the occasion of the 68<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the ROK Independence on August 15, 2013. Additionally, in the 69<sup>th</sup> session of the General Assembly of the United Nations on September 24, 2014, she proposed to North Korea that South and North Korea should jointly build the DMZ World Eco-Peace Park.

The DMZ World Eco-Peace Park is expected to turn the DMZ, an iconic area that represents the Cold War and conflict, into a space of peace and reconciliation, thereby contributing greatly to both the improvement of the inter-Korean relationship and military confidence building.

The ROK government formed the “DMZ World Eco-Peace Park Project Team” within the Ministry of Unification. Additionally, it organized a government-wide joint task force to discuss all matters related to diplomacy, military, the environment, and culture in a systematic way, and outlined a master plan after conducting on-site visits, gathering experts’ opinions and consulting with the related agencies.

The ROK MND is providing active support for the establishment of the DMZ World

---

<sup>1</sup> Originally, it was called the “DMZ World Peace Park,” but was renamed the “DMZ World Eco-Peace Park” by adding the concept of ecology in an address by President Park Geun-hye at the General Assembly of the United Nations on September 24, 2014.

Eco-Peace Park while placing a priority on ensuring military stability by applying the lessons learned from past projects such as the construction of railways and roads connecting South and North Korea in the DMZ. In particular, it focuses on minimizing the negative effects on national security that could potentially be caused by the excessive modification of operational plans or rearrangement of military facilities. To achieve this, the ROK MND is laying out various options so that the measures to ensure military stability could be primarily applied.

The ROK government plans to resume coordination with North Korea at an appropriate time while closely monitoring the development of inter-Korean relations. Once the project takes off, the MND, in close coordination with the United Nations Command (UNC), will take follow-up actions in the military area, including negotiations with North Korea and measures to ensure military stability.

### **3. Development of Arms Control Policy and Establishment of Military Foundation in Preparation for Unification**

The ROK government has continuously made various efforts for arms control to ensure military stability on the Korean Peninsula. However, due to the perpetual provocations made by North Korea, including the attack against the ROK Ship *Cheonan* and shelling at Yeonpyeongdo Island, inter-Korean military confidence, even at the basic level, is not being achieved. Sincerity must be guaranteed and the capability to implement the agreement must be improved to achieve inter-Korean arms control.

The ROK MND is actively participating in major international arms control systems such as the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (NPT) and Chemical Weapons Convention (CWC). This enables the ROK government to enhance its credibility and transparency in the international community and also carry out efforts to uphold national interests.

The ROK government has continuously improved the conditions for arms control by using various methods such as interconnections between military and non-military areas.

In order to collect public opinion related to arms control policy and reflect the opinions of experts, the ROK government issues publications such as the “East Asian Strategic Review” and “Arms Control on the Korean Peninsula.” It also holds the Seoul Defense Dialogue (SDD) annually, mainly with countries in the Asia-Pacific region, to contribute to trust-building and peace settlement on the Korean Peninsula.

Additionally, the ROK government has reinforced the capability to verify arms control led by the Korea Arms Control Verification Agency. It operates verification training sessions in cooperation with the related domestic agencies to develop professional personnel. Also, it

conducts ROK-U.S. combined inspection training and maintains exchanges and cooperation with U.S. and German arms control verification organizations in order to learn the verification capability of advanced countries. The MND will establish a system to respond to military talks at any time by cultivating experts for military talks and conducting mock meetings in preparation for the improvement of the inter-Korean relationship. Based on such efforts, the ROK military prepares for unification which will open up a new era on the Korean Peninsula. The ROK government has set up the Presidential Committee for Unification Preparation, a national organization for unification preparation, to drive the practical preparations for unification. The ROK military also makes systematic preparations for unification by cultivating professional personnel and enhancing military capabilities in conjunction with the ROK government's unification policy. The ROK will manage the security situation on the Korean Peninsula in a stable manner and set the conditions for unification by thoroughly preparing for any types of situations that could occur within the framework of the inter-Korean relationship.

## Section 2 Ensuring Inter-Korean Exchanges and Cooperation, and Providing Humanitarian Assistance

---

The MND provides military support to the trust-building process on the Korean Peninsula by offering military assurance to inter-Korean exchange and cooperation projects and also by making efforts to solve the issues regarding ROK prisoners of war (POWs). From a humanitarian perspective, the ROK government repatriated Chinese soldiers' remains which had been buried in the ROK, and also plans to discuss South-North joint remains recovery with a high priority once conditions are set.

---

### 1. Military Assurance to Inter-Korean Exchange and Cooperation Projects

Inter-Korean exchange and cooperation projects have been drastically reduced since the imposition of the “May 24 Measures,”<sup>1</sup> which were announced by the ROK government in a legitimate response against North Korea’s attack on the ROK Ship *Cheonan* in 2010. Despite promoting the trust-building process on the Korean Peninsula, there has not been much progress in the inter-Korean exchange and cooperation projects due to continued North Korean threats and provocations. The ROK military provides military assurance to the inter-Korean exchange and cooperation projects such as the operation of the Kaesong Industrial Complex and reunion of separated families, and is maintaining a firm readiness posture to immediately respond to contingencies.

**| Military Assurance to Inter-Korean Crossings |** Direct inter-Korean crossings have been carried out via land, sea, and air routes. However, since the imposition of the May 24 Measures, only the crossings by land are being allowed. Crossings by land are carried out through roads and railroads within the Joint Administrative Areas in the western and eastern corridors; however, crossings through railroads have been suspended since December 2008.

---

<sup>1</sup> The main contents of the measures include: prohibiting North Korean ships from sailing in South Korean waters, halting all North-South trade, banning visits by South Koreans to North Korea, prohibiting new investment by South Koreans in North Korea, etc.

The crossings through the Joint Administrative Area in the western corridor have been carried out consistently except for the period when the operation of the Kaesong Industrial Complex was halted (April 8–September 16, 2013). The Joint Administrative Area in the eastern corridor is used in case there is a need for crossing, such as the separated families' reunion event held in February 2014.

The ROK military consults with the UNC and the North Korean military about crossing plans in accordance with the Armistice Agreement and inter-Korean agreements. It also provides security and convoys for the inter-Korean crossings. It will continue to protect the safety and property of the people by preparing for any contingencies and providing consistent support for inter-Korean exchanges and cooperation.

**| Operations of Inter-Korean Military Communication Lines |** South and North Korea have established a communication system between their respective military situation rooms in the eastern and western corridors. Through the military communication lines, they exchange information related to crossings as well as faxes between the respective military authorities. Although suspension and reopening has been repeated unilaterally by North Korea, the communication lines continue to serve as the inter-Korean communication channel.

Since May 31, 2011, when North Korea suspended the military communication lines in the eastern corridor and shut down its liaison office in Mt. Kumgang, only the military communication lines in the western corridor have been operated. On March 27, 2013, North Korea cut off the military communication lines in the western corridor as well, which were used for entering the Kaesong Industrial Complex. On April 8, it announced the temporary suspension of the complex. Starting from on September 16, operation of the Kaesong Industrial Complex was resumed through working-level inter-Korean talks. The ROK MND participated in the subcommittee for crossing, communication, and customs, which falls under the Inter-Korean Joint Committee for the Kaesong Industrial Complex, and held consultations with North Korea to reopen the military communication lines on September 6.

North Korea requested the ROK to provide materials and equipment for the purpose of ensuring stable communications. The ROK provided North Korea with fax machines, vehicles and fuel twice in January 2014 and another two times in February. The ROK military will maintain the inter-Korean military communication lines in a stable manner even in the future, utilizing it as communication channel for mutual interests including the inter-Korean exchange and cooperation projects.

## 2. Resolving the ROK POW Issue

The ROK government has designated the ROK POW issue as one of the key national tasks in order to resolve it as a top priority. However, it is experiencing difficulties in finding fundamental solutions because North Korea has continued to adhere to the claim that all ROK POWs were transferred to the Neutral Nations Repatriation Commission, and that there are no ROK POWs detained in North Korea after the POW exchanges in the 1950s.

**| ROK POWs: Whereabouts, Family Reunions and Repatriation |** The ROK government has continuously proposed to North Korea to discuss and resolve issues related to confirming the fate and whereabouts of ROK POWs and their repatriation as a top-priority issue from an inter-Korean reconciliation and humanitarian perspective.

During the Inter-Korean Ministerial-level Talks and Inter-Korean Red Cross Talks following the Inter-Korean Summit in June 2000, the two Koreas agreed to discuss and resolve the issue of ROK POWs in conjunction with the issue of separated families. In February 2006, during the seventh Inter-Korean Red Cross Talks, an agreement was reached “to discuss and resolve the issue of confirming the fate and whereabouts of those who went missing during and after the war as part of the separated families issue,” and this principle was reconfirmed during the 20<sup>th</sup> Inter-Korean Ministerial-level Talks in February 2007 and the eighth Inter-Korean Red Cross Talks in April 2007. The fate and whereabouts of 20 POWs were identified according to the agreement on reunions of separated families in February 2013. As of 2014, the fate and whereabouts of 41 ROK POWs have been identified through the separated families’ reunion events, and 17 of them were reunited with their families from the ROK.

Meanwhile, the ROK government is putting forward efforts for the safe repatriation of ROK POWs and their families who escaped from North Korea and fled to third countries. When the escapes of ROK POWs and their families from North Korea are confirmed, the ROK government first ensures their personal safety from the perspective of protecting ROK nationals living abroad and exerts diplomatic efforts to repatriate them to the ROK as soon as possible. Recently, the repatriation of ROK POW remains has begun, and the ROK government is taking measures to support it.

From 1994 to 2014, 80 ROK POWs and approximately 430 POW family members returned to the ROK after escaping from North Korea and fleeing to third countries. Since 2011, the repatriation of ROK POWs has not been made at all due to the aging of the ROK POWs and North Korea’s reinforcement of surveillance to prevent escapes from North Korea. The status of the repatriated ROK POWs is shown in Chart 6-1.

Chart 6-1. Status of Repatriated ROK POWs

As of September 2014, Unit: Person(s)

Year	Total	1994	1997	1998	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011-2014
Person(s)	80	1	1	4	2	9	6	6	5	14	11	7	4	6	3	1	-

**| Supporting Former ROK POWs to Resettle in the ROK |** Since the repatriation of the late First Lieutenant Cho Chang-ho in 1994, the ROK government has developed government-wide plans to have the ROK POWs repatriated from North Korea and provide support to those who have returned to the ROK. The ROK MND is implementing a wide range of policies that support the stable and fast resettlement of the ROK POWs in the ROK and allow them to happily live the remainder of their lives.

In accordance with the Act on the Repatriation, Treatment of the Republic of Korea Armed Forces Prisoners of War enacted in 1998, the MND provides wages, housing support, pension and financial support for medical care to POWs who have returned to the ROK. Moreover, the families of the POWs who died in North Korea are registered as “families of the ROK POWs” on top of being designated as North Korean defectors and receive separate support funds per household.

In 2013, the Act on the Repatriation, Treatment of the Republic of Korea Armed Forces Prisoners of War was revised in order to address shortfalls discovered in the process of enforcing the law and improve the support system for ROK POWs. The support funds will be paid in the form of a pension instead of a lump sum, and rental housing will be provided as part of housing support to ensure the stable lives and resettlement of the ROK POWs.

Recently, there have been some cases where the repatriation of ROK POW remains were conducted through individuals’ own efforts. Therefore, a revision of the legislation is being made to support such cases within reasonable capacity.

Furthermore, the MND is putting forth efforts to understand the difficulties that the ROK POWs face during the process of settling down by conducting household visits and providing them with emotional support through hosting roundtables with POWs and their families on a regular basis.

The MND plans to exert efforts to fundamentally resolve the issue of ROK POWs, and will continue to confirm the fate and whereabouts of the POWs and facilitate reunions of POWs and their families through the separated families’ reunion events. Moreover, diplomatic efforts such as enhancing cooperation with third countries will continue in order to ensure the safety of the ROK POWs and their family members who fled from North Korea. Also, various types of support policies will be continuously developed and modified to ensure the stable resettlement of the returned POWs and their families in the ROK.

### 3. Repatriation of Chinese Soldiers' Remains and South-North Joint Remains Recovery

The MND has separately buried and maintained the remains of North Korean soldiers and Chinese soldiers found in the process of excavating the remains of ROK service members killed in action during the Korean War in the cemetery for Korean People's Army (KPA) and Chinese People's Volunteers (CPV) in Paju, Gyeonggi-do. From 1981 to 1997, 43 sets of Chinese soldiers' remains were sent back to China through the UNC Military Armistice Commission (MAC); however, since then the repatriation of remains has been suspended as North Korea rejected the acceptance of remains for the purpose of nullifying the Armistice Agreement.

President Park Geun-hye proposed the repatriation of Chinese soldiers' remains in a humanitarian spirit when she visited China in June 2013. In November 2013, China accepted this proposal and the ROK and China held several discussions that led to the agreement on repatriating the Chinese soldiers' remains prior to the Chinese Qingming Festival on April 5, 2014.

The MND prepared for the repatriation by committing 14,000 man-days in excavating, drying, and cleaning the remains. On March 28, 2014, the transfer ceremony for the 437 sets of Chinese soldiers' remains was held at the Incheon International Airport with the ROK and Chinese government officials in attendance. Any additional remains of Chinese soldiers that are found during excavation will be sent back to China on a yearly basis following the same procedure.

The repatriation of Chinese soldiers' remains is considered to be a new milestone for the take-off and development of the ROK-China relationship by healing the scars of the past between the two countries. It is also regarded as an exemplary case which contributes to the settlement of peace in Northeast Asia.



Transfer ceremony for Chinese soldiers' remains (March 2014)



Promotional video for the repatriation  
of Chinese soldiers' remains

drawing more attention from the ROK people. During the 2<sup>nd</sup> Inter-Korean Defense Ministerial Talks in 2007, South and North Korea agreed to discuss and resolve the joint remains recovery issue. Due to lack of response from North Korea yet, no progress has been made so far. However, once conditions improve, the ROK government plans to discuss the joint remains recovery issue as a top priority for the establishment of mutual trust and the future-oriented development of the inter-Korean relationship.

# Chapter 7

## Innovative Defense Management and Promotion of the Defense Industry



Section 1 Enhancement of the Efficiency of Defense Budget Management 172  
Section 2 Strengthening Competitiveness of Force Improvement Projects 180  
Section 3 Creative Defense R&D and Promotion of the Defense Industry 184



FA-50 fielding ceremony (October 2014)

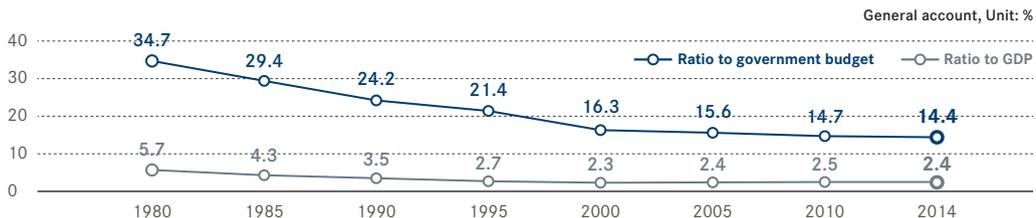
# Section 1 Enhancement of the Efficiency of Defense Budget Management

It is critical to secure an adequate budget amount for national defense in order to consolidate the defense posture and execute stable defense reforms. The Ministry of National Defense (MND) exerts efforts to secure an adequate defense budget and to manage it efficiently. Moreover, the MND strives to further increase management efficiency and expand the use of civilian resources in all aspects of national defense to maximize the value within the limited defense budget.

## 1. Securing an Adequate Defense Budget

**| Changes in Defense Budget Allocation |** Due to the perpetual military threat posed by North Korea, the strengthening of military power by neighboring countries in Northeast Asia and changes in the military environment, the need to increase the ROK defense budget is growing. However, the ratio of the defense budget to the ROK's gross domestic product (GDP), as well as to the entire government budget, is decreasing. As of 2014, the defense budget accounted for 2.38% of GDP and 14.4% of the government budget. This trend is shown in Chart 7-1.

Chart 7-1. Trend of Defense Budget vis-à-vis GDP and Government Budget



**| Importance of Securing an Adequate Defense Budget |** The security threat surrounding the ROK such as the continuous local provocations by North Korea and territorial disputes among the countries in Northeast Asia are becoming more diverse and

complicated. In addition to the threats of nuclear tests and launches of missiles and multiple rocket launchers (MRLs), North Korea is heightening the level of new threats with UAV infiltration and increased cyber-attacks. Failure to respond effectively to these kinds of security crises on the Korean Peninsula can have a negative impact on the ROK's economy.

For the ROK, although the defense budget to GDP ratio is higher than the world average of 2.11%, it is lower than that of major nations involved in conflicts or military confrontations such as the United States, Russia and Israel. The defense budget to GDP ratios of the major nations involved in conflicts or military confrontations are shown in Chart 7-2.

**Chart 7-2. Defense Budget to GDP Ratios of Major Nations Involved in Conflicts or Military Confrontations**

As of 2013

Georgia	ROK	Russia	Lebanon	U.S.	Iran	Jordan	Israel	Pakistan	World Average
2.29	2.42	3.08	4.15	3.7	4.13	3.57	5.98	2.47	2.11

\* Source: *The Military Balance 2014* (International Institute for Strategic Studies (IISS), February 2014)

In the current security environment where various security threats are intensifying, it is important for the ROK to maintain national defense capabilities commensurate with the size of its economy in order to ensure safety and comfort in the lives of the ROK people. As such, securing an adequate budget for national defense is critical to support it.

**| Desired Effects of Securing an Adequate Defense Budget |** An adequate amount of investment in the defense budget produces a public goods called “national security,” which provides the foundation for people to conduct economic activities with reassurance. Moreover, the defense budget makes a contribution to the national economy by creating various economic effects which exceed the investment amount. For example, defense expenditure of 1 billion won creates positive economic spillover effects such as generating 1.68 billion won in production, creating an added value of 780 million won, and generating the effect of 12.3 new employments.

**Chart 7-3. Industrial Spillover Effect of National Defense Expenditure**

As of 2010

Category	Manufacturing Industry	Service Industry	Industry Average	National Defense
Production Inducement Effect	2.1 billion won	1.66 billion won	1.88 billion won	1.68 billion won
Added-value Inducement Effect	570 million won	820 million won	690 million won	780 million won
Employment Inducement Effect	9.4 persons	18.3 persons	13.9 persons	12.3 persons

\* Direct and indirect economic effects created by a defense expenditure of 1 billion won

\* Source: Spinoff Effect of Defense Budget on National Economy (Korea Institute for Defense Analyses (KIDA), 2014)

Defense industry exports reached 3.4 billion dollars for the first time in 2013, recording an accumulated amount of 10 billion dollars. Additionally, the main exports of the defense industry have been diversified from ammunition and small arms to vessels, aircraft, etc. From a domestic point of view, defense industry exports create quality jobs which in turn provide a stable foundation for the growth of the defense industry; from an international point of view, defense industry exports promote diplomatic and economic cooperation as well as military exchanges. It also has various spillover effects such as contributing to the development of the nation's science and technology by transferring advanced technologies to the private sector.

The MND strives for securing an adequate national defense budget while recognizing the importance of the defense budget.

## 2. Defense Budget and Mid-term Defense Program

**| 2014 Defense Budget |** In 2014, the defense budget amounted to 35 trillion, 705.6 billion won, which is a 3.5% increase compared to 2013. It focused on the establishment of a robust defense posture, the reinforcement of future-oriented defense capabilities and the improvement of working environments for service members. Chart 7-4 shows the amount of the defense budget (general account) and its allocation in fiscal year (FY) 2014.

**Chart 7-4. Amount of FY 2014 Defense Budget (General Account) and its Allocation**

Unit: Billion won, %

Category	FY 2013 (A)	FY 2014 (B)	Changes (B-A)		
				Increase Rate	
Total Defense Budget	34,497.0	35,705.6	1,208.6	3.5	
	Subtotal	24,322.1	25,196.0	873.9	3.6
Force Operating Costs	Troop Operating Costs	14,284.7	14,840.9	556.2	3.9
	Operations and Maintenance Costs	10,037.4	10,355.1	317.7	3.2
Force Improvement Budget	10,174.9	10,509.6	334.7	3.3	



2014 defense budget  
promotional video

The force operating costs, which amounted to 25 trillion, 196 billion won, or 70% of the total defense budget, increased 3.6% compared to 2013. In order to establish a robust defense posture that the ROK people can rely on, the requirements to continuously enhance operation and security facilities and strengthen the combat capabilities of field units by securing new bulletproof helmets, parachutes and functional winter garments, and replacing old sleeping bags, have been reflected. Additionally, in order to ensure logistics support capabilities, the requirements for core equipment maintenance and repair parts have been reflected, and the conditions for combat support will also be improved by modernizing outdated logistics support facilities such as maintenance areas, ammunition storage and armories. Also, a realistic training and education system will be established by securing comprehensive training sites corresponding to actual battlefield situations.

The requirements to reinforce future-oriented defense capabilities in accordance with the changing strategic environment have been also reflected. The troop structure will be streamlined in order to build an elite force focusing on cadres. Additionally, strong reserve forces will be built up by improving the environment for the training of reserve forces and increasing the training allowances paid to reservists.

The requirements to improve the work environment for service members have been reflected to ensure a rewarding military service experience. The monthly salary for enlisted members has been increased by 15% according to a plan to double it by 2017. The unit cost of meals has been increased, and more civilian cooks have been hired to provide service members with varied and delicious meals. Efforts have been made to improve the national defense medical support system, e.g., by expanding the scope of service members eligible for vaccination and enhancing first aid supplies. Also, a priority has been put on projects for improving service environments for service members such as the repair and renovation of old military barracks and enhancement of convenience facilities.

The force improvement budget amounted to 10 trillion, 509.6 billion won, which is a 3.3% increase compared to 2013. An amount of 1 trillion, 177.1 billion won was allocated to 21 projects, including a long-range air-to-surface missile system for the early establishment of the Kill Chain and Korea Air and Missile Defense (KAMD), which are intended to counter North Korea's asymmetric threats such as nuclear and missile threats.

Also, an amount of 1 trillion, 99.5 billion won was allocated to 27 projects, including a GOP advanced security system, to counter North Korea's local provocations. A total of 7 trillion, 345.8 billion won was allocated to projects for acquiring next-generation MLRS, frigates, and fighters (F-X) in order to establish a self-reliant defense posture. As such, investments are made consistently to build up elite military forces and ensure preparation against both existing and potential threats.

The MND plans to put a priority on more urgent and necessary projects when allocating

the budget for 2015. In particular, it will actively reflect the requirements for strengthening disaster preparedness and safety management, assuring human rights for service members, and improving barracks culture as well.

**| 2015-2019 Mid-term Defense Program |** The budget allocated to the 2015-2019 Mid-term Defense Program amounts to 222.9 trillion won, reflecting an increase of 5.6% for force operation, an increase of 10.6% for force improvement, and an increase of 7.2% for the total defense budget on average for the mid-term period.

Regarding force operating costs, the budget allocation has focused on switching to an elite troop structure, establishing a complete military readiness posture, improving the welfare of service members, and removing welfare blind spots.

In connection with the reduction in troop size, a priority has been put on the requirement for an augmentation of cadres to ensure the exertion of substantive combat power. Essential supplies and equipment are to be reinforced in battalion- and below-level combat units in order to guarantee the survivability of service members. Operation and security facilities are to be strengthened to reinforce the readiness posture in enemy contact areas such as GPs and GOPs. The combat gear for reserve forces will be reinforced and training conditions will be improved to enable the reserve forces to exert combat power equivalent to that of active duty forces. Lastly, to enhance the morale and welfare of service members, improvements will be made such as increasing the monthly salary for enlisted members, expanding cultural facilities in military barracks, improving living conditions for service members, and enhancing the military medical support system.

Regarding force improvement, the budget allocation has focused on strengthening core combat power to deter North Korean threat of an aggression and local provocations, securing vital forces in unit reorganization to execute the ROK military's defense reform, strengthening the core capabilities to establish a self-reliant defense posture, and carrying out creative national defense research and development (R&D).

Preparedness against an aggression in enemy contact areas has been reinforced by building up the Kill Chain and KAMD and deploying counter-battery detection radar. Additionally, efforts will be made to enhance the ROK military's surveillance, reconnaissance, and command and control capabilities, and improve its maneuver and precision strike capabilities while acquiring the essential forces required to enhance the combat power of field units. The naval strength required to strengthen the capabilities for protecting sea lines of communication (SLOC) and for amphibious operations will be acquired, as well as the air power needed to achieve air superiority and acquire long-distance operational capabilities. Moreover, investments will be expanded to acquire defense science and technology capabilities corresponding to the level of advanced countries, and also to develop the Agency

for Defense Development into a world-class research institute. The private sector's participation in national defense research and development will be encouraged, support for businesses in the defense industry will be reinforced, and the defense industry will be promoted.

The 2015-2019 Mid-term Defense Program budget breakdown is shown in Chart 7-5.

**Chart 7-5. Mid-term Defense Program Budget Breakdown**

Unit: Trillion won, %

Category	2014	Project Years					Total
		2015	2016	2017	2018	2019	
<b>Defense Budget</b>	<b>35.7</b>	<b>38.5</b>	<b>41.5</b>	<b>44.6</b>	<b>47.6</b>	<b>50.6</b>	<b>222.9</b>
<b>(Increase Rate)</b>	<b>(3.5)</b>	<b>(7.9)</b>	<b>(7.8)</b>	<b>(7.4)</b>	<b>(6.7)</b>	<b>(6.3)</b>	<b>(7.2)</b>
Force Operating Costs	25.2	26.8	28.4	30.1	31.6	33.2	150.1
(Increase Rate)	(3.6)	(6.3)	(6.1)	(5.9)	(5.1)	(4.9)	(5.6)
(Share)	(70.6)	(69.5)	(68.4)	(67.4)	(66.4)	(65.6)	(67.3)
Force Improvement Budget	10.5	11.7	13.1	14.5	16	17.4	72.8
(Increase Rate)	(3.3)	(11.8)	(11.5)	(10.9)	(10)	(9)	(10.6)
(Share)	(29.4)	(30.5)	(31.6)	(32.6)	(33.6)	(34.4)	(32.7)

### 3. Enhancing the Efficiency of Defense Management

**| Defense Management Efficiency Inspection Committee** | Efforts have been continuously made to promote efficient, advanced management techniques within the ROK military and enhance its operational efficiency.

The MND has operated the Defense Management Efficiency Inspection Committee, consisting of civilian and military experts and chaired by the Vice Minister of National Defense, since 2013. Through this committee, the “Defense Management Efficiency Plan” for the efficient management of the budget, organization, and personnel has been established, and the committee checks the progress of the plan. The organizations subject to this plan have also been expanded from the Army, Navy, and Air Force to the military units and defense institutions directly under the MND.

In order to maximize the value of defense expenditures, not only will efforts be made to save the budget, but projects which can link the combat readiness posture with the tenets of the national defense policy will also be selected and continuously pursued.

**| Operation of Military Executive Agencies** | The MND has designated institutions that carry out business management and execution-type activities as military executive agencies in order to continuously promote efficient defense management.

The military executive agency system selects the heads of agencies through a process of open recruitment inside and outside of the military, provides them with autonomy in organization, personnel and finance, and makes them responsible for the performance of the agency. Since the system was first pilot-operated in 2009, it has been expanded steadily to include 18 institutions in the maintenance, supply, medical and printing areas designated and operated as military executive agencies in 2014.

The military executive agency system has continuously created tangible results, such as productivity growth and an improved service level. The Korea Armed Forces Printing & Publishing Depot has achieved a 56.8% increase in annual production since it was designated as a military executive agency in 2009. The Armed Forces Capital Hospital has been able to provide service members with improved service, such as reducing the pre-operation waiting time by 76.1%. Since it was designated as a military executive agency it has made outstanding achievements by obtaining 19 external certifications, 62 awards and 34 patents.

#### **4. Efficient Use of Civilian Resources**

In connection with the troop reduction plan for defense reform, the MND strives to utilize civilian human resources and funds efficiently in noncombatant areas such as logistics, installation and welfare, while concentrating the limited military service resources on combat missions.

The MND prepares the “Basic Plan for the Use of Civilian Resources in Defense” every five years so that the utilization of civilian resources can be linked to mid- to long-term human and financial resource planning. The Basic Plan for the Use of Civilian Resources in Defense (2014-2018) aims to save 200 billion won of the defense budget in noncombatant areas by utilizing personnel, capital and civilian management techniques in a synchronized manner, and reinvest the saved amount in other national defense areas efficiently. With the use of civilian resources, the quality of national defense service will be improved by increasing the equipment operation rate, improving the quality of meals and enhancing the professionalism in education.

Various efforts are put forward to use civilian resources in an efficient way. Since 2012, some military units have contracted out service support activities such as laundry, waste collection and repair services to civilian companies. This is intended to reduce active-duty personnel in the units by entrusting noncombatant services to the private sector, and will be introduced to all supply support units by 2017. Also, efforts to save the defense budget will

be made by applying civilian technologies utilized by the ESCO and WASCO projects.<sup>1</sup>

The MND will continue to use the limited defense budget efficiently by applying the technology and creativity of the private sector in various areas such as logistics, installation, welfare and education.

**Chart 7-6. Use of Civilian Resources and Detailed Tasks in the Basic Plan for the Use of Civilian Resources in Defense (2014-2018)**

Category	Detailed Tasks
Outsourcing to Private Sector	Increase in outsourced maintenance, introduction of vehicle leasing, outsourcing of repair service, laundry and waste collection
Applying Management Techniques	Extended application of the prime vendor system, extended operation of the military executive agency system
Attracting Private Capital	Eco-friendly renovation projects for gas, electricity and water supply facilities, establishing field maintenance support centers
Utilizing Civilians	Hiring more civilian cooks, hiring more civilians in military educational institutions

<sup>1</sup> These are projects to enhance military installations without any financial burden and save public utility costs by attracting the investments of private companies which have energy- and water-saving technologies. A part of the public utility costs saved during a certain period of time will be returned to those companies. From 2014 to 2018, budget savings of approximately 47 billion won is expected. ESCO: Energy Service COmpany, WASCO: Water Service COmpany.

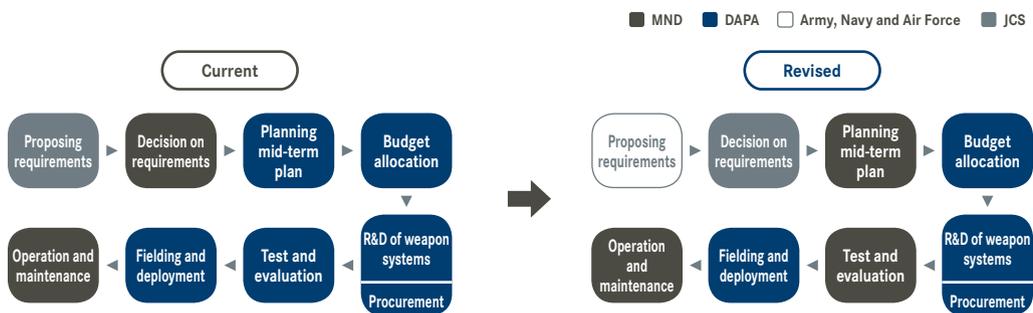
# Section 2 Strengthening Competitiveness of Force Improvement Projects

To conduct force improvement projects that require an enormous budget in an efficient and transparent way is the public desire and also one of the main tasks of the national defense policy. The MND made amendments to the Defense Acquisition Program Act in 2014 to adjust functions among agencies and strengthen the functions of requirement review, analysis and evaluation. In particular, it is preparing comprehensive improvement measures by making an overall review of the project management system, expertise, project information management and the check and monitoring system in order to innovate force improvement projects and gain the people's trust.

## 1. Efficient Execution of Force Improvement Projects

**Revision of the Defense Acquisition Program Act** | According to the Defense Acquisition Program Act, as revised in 2014, the MND is responsible for the policy function of force improvement projects and the Defense Acquisition Program Administration (DAPA) is in charge of the execution function of force improvement projects.

Chart 7-7. Functional Changes of Agencies in Accordance with the Revision of the Defense Acquisition Program Act



Accordingly, the MND plans the mid-term defense program to build up military strength in an economical and efficient way by reviewing the adequacy of requirements, including weapon systems. It is also responsible for planning the test and evaluation of weapon systems as well as making a judgment on them. The ROK Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS) decides the

weapon system requirements, while the DAPA is responsible for execution, which includes project management and contract management. This function coordination between agencies will lead to the systematic and efficient execution of force improvement projects and enhance the expertise of each agency.

**| Strengthening the Requirement Review Function |** The MND strengthens the requirement review, by which the adequacy and validity of the requirements decided by the JCS from a military point of view are reviewed, in consideration of the budget and the national defense policy.

Currently, a Force Requirements Review Committee (FRRC),<sup>1</sup> composed of the civil sector, government and military, performs the requirement review. It performs reasonable allocation of the national defense budget by reflecting the results of the requirement review when planning the mid-term defense program.

Chart 7-8 shows the requirement review framework. The Force Requirements Review Committee reviewed a total of 56 requirements from 2011 to September 2014 and suggested adjusting the quantity demanded, the operational performance and the timing of fielding regarding 29 requirements.

The MND will develop the review methods more precisely and systemically to ensure a reasonable requirement review.

**Chart 7-8. Requirement Review Framework**



**| Objective and Scientific Analysis and Evaluation |** Analysis and evaluation is a professional and in-depth analysis activity which supports various decision-making processes regarding force improvement projects. It is performed across every step from planning to acquisition, operation and maintenance for the reasonable use of the defense budget. The MND, DAPA, JCS, Army, Navy and Air Force, Agency for Defense Development and Defense Agency for Technology and Quality performed 231 cases of analysis and evaluation

<sup>1</sup> This is a deliberative body which supports the Minister of National Defense in decision making on force requirements. It was established in December 2010 to deliberate on the validity and priority of the requirement projects. It consists of 20 members, including the committee chair (the Vice Minister of National Defense) and civilian experts.



Ship-to-surface and submarine-to-surface cruise missile launch



Black Eagle opens a 5,400-km air route



Black Eagle in the Singapore Airshow

in 2013.

The MND identifies areas for improvements in the policies and systems of force improvement projects through analysis and evaluation. In 2013, it was able to institutionalize the process of field tests<sup>2</sup> by analyzing the status of fielding evaluation. Once the system for field tests is established, it will be possible to introduce weapon systems in accordance with the requirements of each Service, and the integrity of the weapon systems is estimated to be considerably improved. Also, the information sharing system is improved to ensure that the results of analysis and evaluation can be easily utilized in the subsequent phases.

The MND will strengthen the function of analysis and evaluation by reinforcing the personnel for objective and scientific analysis and evaluation and expanding the infrastructure to enhance the expertise of these personnel.

## 2. Enhancing the ROK People's Trust in Force Improvement Projects

The issues of corruption and poor management regarding some force improvement projects have recently been raised by the media and the National Assembly. The MND diagnoses the causes of corruption and poor management and prepares countermeasures across all areas, including the project management system, expertise in duty execution, management of project information, and the check and monitoring system.

**| Improvement of Project Management System |** An efficient improvement in the project management system is necessary to prevent corruption related to costs and poor project management.

The low-bid procurement system will be improved in order for the ROK military to secure weapons with optimal performance at reasonable costs. The review system will be reinforced at each step, such as requirement planning, acquisition method, and testing and evaluation of weapon systems, to introduce a project management system centered on technology and capability that can ensure quality and performance.

**| Enhancement of Expertise in Duty Execution |** Since the acquisition process for weapon systems is technically difficult and has complicated procedures, a personnel management system based on expertise is to be established together with a training system.

---

<sup>2</sup> The test is performed on initial production and procurement items. The Service with the requirement operates the weapon system first so that it can identify restrictions related to field operation early. The DAPA decides on the follow-on mass production or procurement based on the results of this test.

Various measures will be implemented to maintain a balanced expertise in overall duty execution: For example, personnel exchanges in the area of acquisition will be promoted among the MND, JCS, Army, Navy Air Force and DAPA, and a career path system will be introduced by applying training and career development.

**| Expansion of Project Information Disclosure |** Due to the characteristics of defense projects containing a lot of confidential materials, only a limited number of persons have access to and manage project information. While the information that must be protected by the military continues to be protected to prevent illegal trading of information, the disclosure of information regarding projects and contracts has been significantly expanded.

The openness of the force improvement projects will be enhanced by encouraging the participation of civilian experts in each project step, while the military expertise required for the defense projects is maintained.

**| Strengthening the Check and Monitoring System and Punishment |** In order to prevent corruption related to defense projects, there is a need to develop a system to check and monitor the overall project process.

Thus, the MND has expanded the reward system for reporting corruption and has been preparing concrete measures to eradicate the illegal employment of retirees. At the same time, it has reinforced anti-corruption education and benchmarked agencies with a high level of integrity to promote a culture of integrity. It also plans to improve legal measures to strengthen the guidelines for punishment regarding bribery.

# Section 3 Creative Defense R&D and Promotion of the Defense Industry

---

The ROK military strengthens the ROK's defense capabilities and contributes to the development of the national economy by promoting defense research and development (R&D) and the defense industry. Against this backdrop, it expands investment in R&D and promotes policies to improve the efficiency of R&D and enhance civilian capabilities by developing core technologies based on a selection and concentration strategy and technology exchanges between the private sector and the military. This will serve as a key driving force for the creative economy in the national defense area by creating a virtuous circle of R&D and defense export growth.

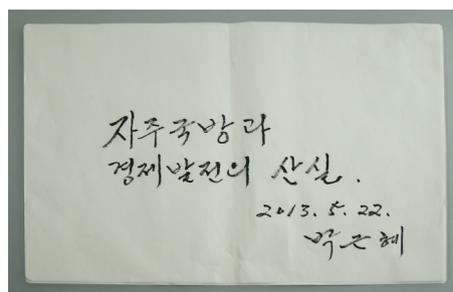
---

## 1. Creative Defense R&D

### | Defense R&D Corresponding to the Development of Creative Economy |

Investment in defense R&D has been expanded to establish policies that place a priority on domestic R&D and the virtuous circle of “technology development first, followed by system development,” in order to raise the level of the ROK's defense science and technology to be the best in the world.

In particular, the ROK expands the development of technology to lead the advancement in weapon systems, the development of high value-added key parts and software, as well as the domestic development of key parts



President Park Geun-hye's visit to the Agency for Defense Development (May 2013)  
In the photo: "Cradle of Self-Defense and Economic Development," May 22, 2013, Park Geun-hye



Opening ceremony of the Korea Defense Technology Exhibition



Promotional animation for technology cooperation between the military and private sector



Promotional video for FA-50 export to Iraq

for stable integrated logistics support. Additionally, creative and challenging research projects are selected and are being implemented to develop new weapon systems in the areas of unmanned systems, robots, etc. for national defense and to secure original, core technologies which will lead the future warfare.

**| Increase in Defense R&D Expenditures and Development of Core Technologies |** In 2014, defense R&D expenditures amounted to 6.5% of the defense budget. In order to acquire the capabilities for the independent development of national security and advanced weapon systems, the defense R&D expenditure will be increased to 8.5% of the defense budget by 2018, and to 15% of the defense budget in the long term.

In order to develop high value-added core technologies, which have a high level of technical difficulty and are monopolized by advanced countries, investment in core technologies will be increased to 10% of the defense R&D budget by 2018, and to 15% of the defense R&D budget in the long term. With these initiatives, the ROK will be able to respond against North Korean threats more effectively, prepare against future warfare, strengthen the defense science and technology capability, and stimulate the development of related industries.

**| Advancement of Defense R&D System |** The ROK military carries out various policies to develop the defense R&D system.

First, it selects research projects based on requirement planning by the ROK JCS as well as a survey of the national and international technology level, while publicly seeking research projects from the military, the Agency for Defense Development (ADD), the Defense Agency for Technology and Quality (DTaQ), and industry-academic cooperation as well. This will create the conditions to discover creative projects and link the advanced science technology of the private sector to the military.

Second, it strengthens R&D capabilities. It expands opportunities for the education of defense R&D personnel and has reorganized the ADD to be suitable to develop core technologies, concentrating its research capabilities on strategic weapons and new technologies. By establishing the Technical Support Center for National Defense Industry attached to the ADD in May 2014, it provides civilian companies with technical support when they develop general weapon systems.

Third, it improves the evaluation system for defense R&D. It has made mandatory the evaluation of R&D projects and the R&D investment results. It has also made defense R&D projects go through preliminary, interim and post evaluations. However, if an agency or company carried out an R&D project sincerely but failed due to the difficulty of the R&D project, the agency or company can be exempt from responsibility, which is intended to leave

the door open for creative and challenging R&D. The MND plans to continuously improve the evaluation system to promote creative and challenging R&D in the national defense area and expand the openness of the R&D.

**| Reinforcement of Civilian-Military Technology Cooperation |** Since the Civil-Military Technology Cooperation Project Promotion Act was revised in 2013, all the ministries and agencies related to R&D have participated in civilian-military technology cooperation projects. The effect of cooperation between the ROK military, which has accumulated advanced defense technologies, and the private sector, which possesses a high level of science technology, is expected to be enormous. The military applies state-of-the-art technologies of the private sector to national defense by promoting Advanced Concept Technology Demonstration (ACTD) projects. In May 2014, the Korea Defense Technology Exhibition was held under the joint sponsorship of the Ministry of Science, ICT and Future Planning, the Ministry of Trade, Industry and Energy, and the Defense Acquisition Program Administration, which provided an opportunity to encourage civilian-military technology cooperation. Technology transfers to the private sector are actively encouraged by opening defense science technologies to the public through the Defense Technology Marketplace<sup>1</sup> and spinning off the patented technologies. Also, defense R&D led by industry-academic cooperation is expanded to encourage the participation of talented personnel from the private sector.

The MND plans to promote civilian-military technology cooperation more actively so that it can strengthen defense capabilities and industrial competitiveness, and contribute to the development of the national economy.

**| Expansion of International Joint Technology Development |** The MND carries out technology cooperation with six countries, including the United States and UK, to acquire cutting-edge core technologies in the defense area. It expands international cooperation through various forms such as the introduction and export of technology and joint development considering the technology level of each partner country.

International joint technology development has been actively carried out since 2011; three projects have been successfully completed, five projects are ongoing, and new projects are waiting to be discovered.

The MND will actively expand the target countries and scope of cooperation as international joint technology development helps to save development costs during the R&D process and to allow exploration of new export markets.

---

<sup>1</sup> An online marketplace created to transfer advanced defense science technologies to the private sector (<http://dtims.dtaq.re.kr>)

## 2. Promotion of Defense Industry

### | Expanded Opportunities to Participate in the Defense Industry |

In order to promote competition within the domestic defense industry, the scope of the defense material and business designation system,<sup>2</sup> which was designed to give a priority to specific companies, has been reduced. The participation of new companies is encouraged by disclosing the information needed to participate in the defense industry to the public. Also, information sharing systems, including the defense import and export support information system, have been established for government ministries, private companies and research institutes to easily search for and use defense industry information. Based on these initiatives, competitive conditions in the domestic defense industry will be improved.



Korea Defense Technology Exhibition (May 2014)

### | Fostering Global Hidden Champions in the Defense Industry |

The MND supports domestic companies in the defense industry in their efforts to acquire global competitiveness. It encourages the participation of the private sector in defense research and development in order to have companies lead in development, production and quality management. Also, the ROK government strengthens support in areas where there are difficulties in attracting private investments and strategic areas such as core components and software. It provides small and medium-sized companies that have export potential and technological competitiveness with customized support packages that include technology development, consulting support, and the establishment of export and marketing strategies.

Additionally, it plans to enhance the core competencies of defense industry companies and foster specialized companies equipped with the scale and expertise that could be competitive in the global market.

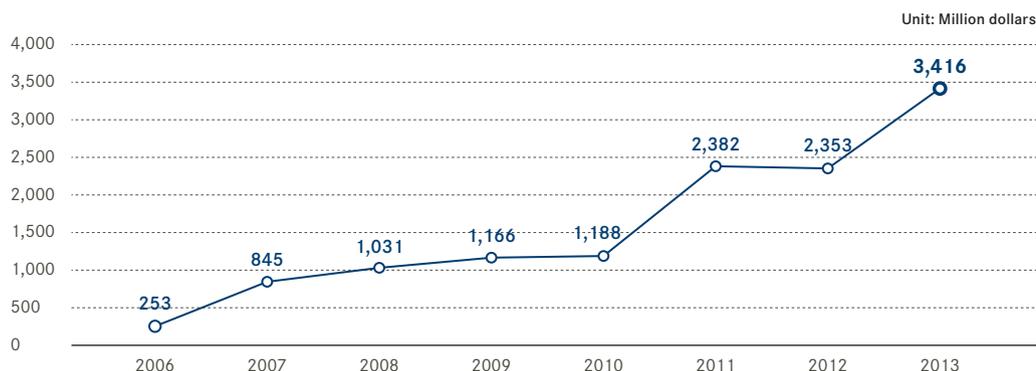
### | Customized Export Policies |

In order to develop the defense industry into an export industry, customized export policies in consideration of the characteristics of the purchasing countries are implemented. For emerging markets, the ROK government seeks defense industrial cooperation in connection with military exchanges and economic assistance; for

<sup>2</sup> A system to designate and manage both the items and the companies of the defense industry with regard to weapon systems (including certain force support systems) and their main components.

countries with advanced defense industries, the ROK government is focusing on counter purchases and joint development. As a result of these efforts, defense industry exports amounted to 3 billion, 416 million dollars (based on the contract amount) in 2013, recording the largest amount ever. Since 2006, defense industry exports have grown continuously. The actual export results are shown in Chart 7-9.

**Chart 7-9. Defense Industry Exports**



**Chart 7-10. Top Five Countries to Which the ROK Makes Defense Industry Exports**

Unit: Million dollars

	2006		2007		2008		2009		2010		2011		2012		2013	
U.S.	136	Turkey	383	Turkey	427	U.S.	398	U.S.	486	Indonesia	1,500	U.S.	737	Iraq	1,129	
Turkey	57	U.S.	209	U.S.	331	Iraq	320	Malaysia	367	U.S.	640	UK	723	U.S.	1,053	
Indonesia	11	Pakistan	100	Egypt	101	Indonesia	229	Turkey	75	Turkey	56	Peru	209	Thailand	485	
UAE	10	Indonesia	31	Indonesia	50	Turkey	43	Indonesia	51	Israel	28	Turkey	135	Norway	230	
Malaysia	7	Syria	26	Colombia	24	Philippines	27	Libya	50	Thailand	16	Colombia	91	Peru	170	

With the diversification of export targets into Europe and South America, the number of countries to which the ROK makes defense industry exports increased from 47 in 2006 to 80 in 2014. Also, the number of companies making defense industry exports increased significantly, from 47 in 2006 to 119 in 2013. In the past, the main export items were composed of ammunition and small arms, however, they have recently been diversified into aircraft, submarines and logistics support



Flight of T-50i exported to Indonesia (September 2013)

vessels, thereby reinforcing the overall foundation of exports. The ROK government plans to secure steady markets, strategically foster export items and strengthen the infrastructure for export support in order to promote defense industry exports.

# Chapter 8

## Creating a Proud and Rewarding Environment for Military Service



Section 1 Establishment of an Open Barracks Culture Trusted by People	192
Section 2 Improvement of Welfare for Service Members	198
Section 3 Development of the Defense Medical System	206
Section 4 Expansion of Support for Retiring Service Members	209



Extreme cold weather training by the ROK Army Special Warfare Command

# Section 1 Establishment of an Open Barracks Culture Trusted by People

---

The Ministry of National Defense (MND) implements various policies to thoroughly evaluate the current barracks culture and establish an open barracks culture trusted by people in a bid to fundamentally resolve the identified problems, including malicious accidents in barracks, evil practices such as beatings and cruel treatment, and slackened discipline. In particular, the ROK government prepares government-wide measures to protect the human rights of service members, build proper character, enhance the leadership of junior officers and NCOs, overcome the closed nature of barracks life, and create a safe environment. The ROK government will continue to innovate the barracks culture by amending the related laws and systems.

---

## 1. Concept of Barracks Culture Innovation

**| Vision and Objectives** | Barracks culture innovation sets its vision on “contributing to building an advanced elite military” and has been implemented with the objective to “establish an open barracks culture trusted by people.” “Trust from people” can be earned by establishing safe, healthy barracks where parents and families feel comfortable sending their sons and daughters as human rights are respected and laws and regulations are observed without cover-ups or hiding. “Open barracks” refer to barracks that actively communicate with the people and society within an acceptable capacity to overcome the closed nature of barracks that separate them from society.

**| Implementation Focus** | In order to achieve the vision and objectives of barracks culture innovation, the MND aims for the values of “autonomy and discipline, safety and communication, human rights and character,” which are the basics for the military, and is



Promotional video for the establishment of an open barracks culture



Promotional video for the Defense Help Call

innovating with a focus on five critical points: (1) Safe and sound barracks, (2) Open barracks that communicate with society, (3) Barracks where human rights are guaranteed, (4) Barracks where autonomy and responsibility are harmonized, and (5) Strong and disciplined barracks.

When major incidents occurred in the past, the military carried out tasks to eradicate irrationalities in the barracks, prevent such accidents, and establish an advanced barracks culture. This effort led to positive results highlighted by the improvement of forces and unit management system, and the enhancement of the military service conditions and environment. However, the military failed to sufficiently reflect the voices from the people who demanded the reinforcement of legal and systematic mechanisms to clean out violence in the barracks, improvement of the leadership of junior officers and NCOs, establishment of a social reward system for military service, and expansion of openness and communications to overcome the military's closed culture.

Based on the public demands and lessons learned during the past efforts to improve barracks culture, the MND prepares substantive options to innovate barracks life and show respect for human rights under the condition that it accepts the common values cherished by a democratic society while maintaining the unique characteristics of the military, which is the last bastion of national defense.

## 2. Diagnosis of Barracks Culture

**| Values and Awareness |** Social changes such as the development of democracy, rising level of education, increase of skilled professionals, and efforts to improve barracks culture since the 1990s paved the way for the gradual progress in human rights awareness and reasonable leadership inside the barracks. “Command based on rank and authority” is changing to “command by setting an example, command based on respect for human rights, and leadership focused on communication, sympathy and autonomy,” while barracks culture is shifting from “absolute obedience” to “legitimate direction and order based on laws and regulations.”

However, despite such changes, there are still people who misunderstand that human rights can be ignored to maintain operational discipline. In addition, deep-rooted bad practices and slackened discipline, which repeatedly cause similar malicious accidents, still remain to be resolved.

**| Laws, Systems and Standards |** The ROK military installed and has operated a human rights department since 2005 and included the ensuring of human rights for service members

on the list of barracks culture improvement tasks. In 2006, the ROK military imposed legal accountability by clearly stating directions for barracks culture improvement in the National Defense Reform Act. Military investigation, inspection and disciplinary actions are developing in a direction that guarantees administrative procedural rights as in general judicial proceedings.

Recently, there has been an increasing demand for legally ensuring or limiting service members' basic rights defined in the Military Code of Conduct in accordance with the Constitution. The awareness that unit management must be carried out by law, not by the arbitrary commands of commanders, is also spreading within and outside of the military.

**| Behavior and Lifestyle |** The number and level of demand for training and education courses and subjects are increasing in order to nurture strong, combat-oriented forces. In addition, the need to expand education on human rights, character, and socialization required for national development and social life during military service is increasing as well. More attention from society and transparency regarding unit management are required, while the officers' force management burden grows heavier due to the shortened service period, high troop replacement and circulation rate, and the enlistment of service members who experience social problems such as being social outcasts and depression.

**| Living Conditions and Environment |** The basic concept of the barracks is shifting from an "accommodation space" to a "living space," and more efforts to reduce the gap in the level of welfare between the military and society are required. The military's medical system is under continuous improvement and the early expansion of the emergency medical evacuation system, equipment, and capabilities is urgent. It is also required to ensure conditions for productive military service to allow service members to concentrate on their own military duties and at the same time prepare for their future after discharge through self-development.

### **3. Measures for Barracks Culture Innovation**

**| Safe and Sound Barracks |** The MND seeks various measures to make the service environment healthier and safer in order to make sure parents feel comfortable in sending their sons and daughters to the military. To this end, the enlistment of personnel disqualified for active service among those who are obligated to serve in the military will be actively prevented by improving the Military Manpower Administration's psychological examination tools, increasing the number of personnel in charge of psychological examinations, and revising the rules on physical checkups for conscription. A customized management system

for maladjusted service members will also be established by developing the “Sociometric Test of Interpersonal Relationship”<sup>1</sup> for service members, strengthening the professionalism of counselors for soldiers, and increasing the number of counselors. Safety blind spots in the barracks will be minimized by expanding the installation of CCTV in battalion-level units, and leadership blind spots will also be



Counseling session with a professional counselor for soldiers

minimized by integrating remote units and barracks facilities into the battalion-level camps. Improvements will be sought continuously for all service members to fulfill their duties in an environment where safety is guaranteed by strengthening access to medical service to take care of patients in remote units and reinforcing emergency medical personnel, equipment and supplies.

**| Open Barracks That Communicate with Society |** The ROK military intends to establish “open barracks that communicate with society” to promote a culture of mutual respect and consideration, ensure communications to overcome the sense of disconnection from society, and guarantee productive military service. For this purpose, communication channels between parents and units will be established by creating Internet communities and SNS pages, operating receive-only cell phones for common use, expanding installation of public video telephones, etc. Also, by developing a reward system for mandatory service members, establishing a “defense talent donation bank” aimed at character building and self-development support for service members, and expanding the system to recognize the service period as college credits, the ROK military will set the conditions for society to recognize the value of military service.

**| Barracks Where Human Rights Are Guaranteed |** Based on the awareness that human rights are the foundation of military discipline, the ROK military will establish “barracks that guarantee human rights” by creating a legal and institutional environment and culture that ensures human rights in the military. The military will shape the conditions that allow service members to cultivate their character focused on respecting human dignity by enhancing character building in schools and military units, expanding the reading coaching

1 Psychological examination tools that complement the limits of the existing self-report test. These tools are designed to obtain objective information on an individual through evaluation by others in the group and evaluate maladjustment for military service and ability for interpersonal interaction in a group.

program, and establishing military libraries in the remote units. Measures to protect the human rights of service members will also be put in place through the enactment and revision of related laws such as the development of the Framework Act on Military Service (tentative title) and enforcement of punishment for assault and battery within barracks. Human rights



Military's human rights education (August 2014)

awareness by the service members will be enhanced through education on human rights and military laws with an increased number of professional lecturers for human rights education besides judicial officers. At the same time, the scope of command and supervision responsibility regarding accidents in each unit will be redefined. Distrust in the military's handling of incidents will be mitigated by developing an incident handling procedure manual which expands civil involvement in the process of dealing with cases.

**| Barracks Where Autonomy and Responsibility Are Harmonized |** “Barracks where autonomy and responsibility are harmonized” will be established so that service members act autonomously within the given boundaries based on their sense of ownership and capability and take responsibility for their actions. To this end, a concept of operation for military barracks based on autonomy and responsibility and a code of conduct for barracks life will be established. Also, verbal violence will be prevented by a culture in which communication based on mutual respect among service members is promoted. Old and small barracks in the GOPs will be modernized quickly, and the unit management area will be gradually transferred to the private service sector after taking the available budget into consideration. By implementing a system that allows soldiers to choose their leave dates and granting visits to GOP border patrol units on holidays and regular units on weekdays, the ROK military encourages service members to be more active so that they can mitigate their sense of isolation and disconnection from society.

**| Strong and Disciplined Barracks |** The principle of rewarding good conduct and punishing evildoing will be applied in accordance with the laws and regulations in order to cultivate elite forces to fight and win against the enemy, which is the military's purpose for existence. In addition, “strong and disciplined barracks” will be established by improving the officers' leadership and setting an example. To this end, the number of newly appointed officers will be greatly reduced, and a competition and evaluation system for universities in agreement with academic-military partnerships will be introduced to prevent officer qualifi-

cations from degrading due to a large number of appointments. A system to remove disqualified personnel at an early stage will be put in place by imposing strict evaluation standards such as a commission requirement evaluation to screen the disqualified personnel. “Military ethics” will be introduced as a core subject in the candidate and refresher education to allow service members to be equipped with the proper military values. A customized specialty granting system for soldiers based on “personal wishes and capabilities” will be introduced to place the right personnel in the right positions by considering the soldiers’ capabilities. The act of disrupting command structure and hindering the harmony and unity of units will be eradicated and subject to strict punishment to establish “units that fight and win” by ensuring trust and solidarity between the heads and their subordinates while the command authority is firmly established and respected.

# Section 2 Improvement of Welfare for Service Members

---

The development of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Military Personnel Welfare Basic Plan in 2013 presented an opportunity for new hope and a vision for the improvement of the quality of life and welfare of military personnel. Based on this, the ROK military enhances the basic welfare such as food, clothing and shelter, modernizes barracks facilities, expands the infrastructure for welfare, and increases support for military families to allow service members to concentrate on their mission of safeguarding their nation.

---

## 1. Establishment of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Military Personnel Welfare Basic Plan

The MND established the 2<sup>nd</sup> Military Personnel Welfare Basic Plan (2013-2017)<sup>1</sup> in 2013 based on the Framework Act on Military Welfare. The plan is composed of 77 detailed tasks in seven categories, including soldier welfare, outplacement support, residence support, and family welfare, based on the achievements and thresholds highlighted by the 1<sup>st</sup> Military Personnel Welfare Basic Plan established in 2009.

The MND will double the salary for soldiers by 2017 compared to that of 2012 and improve the compensation system, such as providing insurance for those who passed away during military service. Regarding the payroll system for military personnel, the MND works to modify the system to reflect distinct characteristics such as rank, mission, and work environment in the system. The MND will also develop special enemy contact area allowances, maritime duty allowances, air crew allowances, and hazardous duty allowances after considering the risk of their stationed areas and duties.

The MND plans to expand cultural and sports facilities such as military community

---

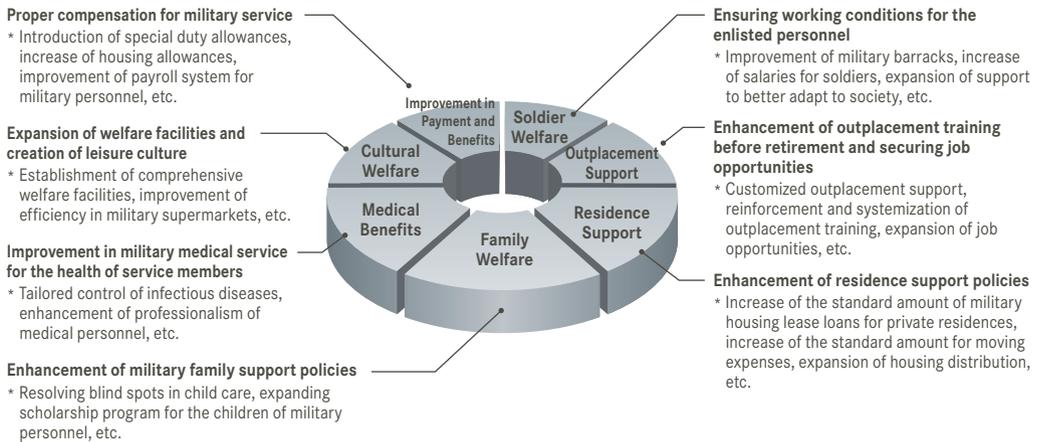
<sup>1</sup> 1 According to Article 6 of the Framework Act on Military Welfare, the Minister of National Defense is to establish the Military Personnel Welfare Basic Plan and get approval from the President after consulting with the heads of central administrative agencies every five years.



centers and futsal fields in the military facilities and build welfare facilities for soldiers in the forward areas. Also, the MND plans to consistently improve old military residences and increase the standard amount of military housing lease loans for private residences while expanding child care centers and cooperative child care spaces in military residences. The MND will bridge the cultural gap between those working in large cities and those working in remote areas to provide more cultural benefits for military personnel working in remote areas.

As such, the 2<sup>nd</sup> Military Personnel Welfare Basic Plan becomes the basis on which military welfare policies are implemented in a systematic and integrated way. It is expected that the level of welfare for military personnel will be elevated to one where service members can feel honored and be proud of their military service.

**Chart 8-1. Key Points of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Military Personnel Welfare Basic Plan**



## 2. Improvement of Basic Necessities for Service Members

**| Quality Improvement of Clothing and Personal Equipment |** The MND supplies high-quality, multi-functional clothing and personal equipment in order to enhance the combat execution capability and satisfaction of service members.

The MND upgraded uniforms by applying an ergonomic design to provide greater mobility and convenience, as well as added functionality to prepare for various types of battlefield situations. In particular, the combat uniform is primarily developed to make sure that service members can demonstrate their full combat power. Functional combat boots that are waterproof while letting sweat escape easily were developed by applying advanced civilian technologies on top of high-quality materials. These boots have been supplied to all

service members since the second half of 2014.

Raincoats, the inner and outer layers of winter jackets, functional gloves, and sailors' uniform and boots are also undergoing improvement and will be supplied in phases.

Personal equipment is developed with the goal of improving the survivability of combat personnel and ensuring various functionalities. The bulletproof body armor was upgraded to protect individuals from the rounds fired by the new AK-74 rifles possessed by North Korea. Detachable pouches were added to the combat vests to allow the service

members to easily carry items necessary for their missions. The downside of the bulletproof helmet used to be the pain caused by its weight on a specific part of the head when it was worn for a long time. To address this issue, a buffering pad was applied inside the helmet and the chin band was upgraded to better fasten the helmet. Such improvement will reduce combat fatigue and provide greater protection from external shocks.

The ROK military will continue to research and develop clothing and personal equipment to prepare for the future battlefield environment as well as supply them early to contribute to the enhancement of combat capabilities.

**| Supplying Hygienic, Safe Meals |** The ROK military offers safe, nutritious and well-balanced meals to service members to ensure their health and combat power.

When planning menus, the ROK military applies 3,100 kcal, which is higher than the recommended 2,600 kcal per day for ordinary people, considering the greater amount of physical activities carried out by service members such as education and training. It also gradually increases the basic meal allowance for service members to provide various main meals, high-quality snacks and desserts that are attuned to the tastes of young service members.

**Chart 8-2. Improvements in Clothing**



New bulletproof helmet that can protect the head, ears and temples



New bulletproof body armor that has greater protection against major enemy firearms and enhanced functionality



Combat backpack that can be used according to the type of operations



Functional combat boots that are lighter and have enhanced waterproof and sweat escape functions



Functional winter suit that has greater waterproof and sweat escape functions and enhanced heat preservation

**Chart 8-3. Rate of Increase in Basic Meal Allowance per Person, per Day<sup>2</sup>**

Category	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014
Unit price (won)	5,399	5,650	5,820	6,155	6,432	6,848
Rate of increase (%)	3.6	4.6	3.0	5.8	4.5	6.5
Average (%)	4.3					-

The ROK military has hired civilian cooks since 1996 in order to supply delicious meals to service members. The civilian cooks play an important role in improving the taste of the meals supplied, leading the overall cooking process, and training soldiers on the cook's duty. They are expected to be deployed to all military kitchens in company-level units by 2020.

**Chart 8-4. Plan on Hiring Civilian Cooks**

Category	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020
Total number (persons)	1,586	1,710	1,809	1,888	2,029	2,139	2,332
Achievement rate (%)	68	73	78	81	87	92	100

Providing meals in the military is unique in that meals must be provided to many people at the same time. Therefore, nothing is more important than the safety and hygiene of meals. For this reason, the ROK military enhances safety and hygiene management by phase from signing the food supplies contract to serving meals.

When making a contract for food supplies, the ROK military prefers Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point System (HACCP)-certified companies and conducts joint hygiene inspections of the contractors that supply to the military twice a year in cooperation with the Ministry of Food and Drug Safety (MFDS), etc. When any problem occurs with food supplies, the ROK military reports the case to the MFDS and the relevant local government so that the materials can be retrieved and discarded, while the companies involved are strictly excluded from military food supply contracts. In the future, the ROK military will establish 11 modernized military food supply centers in each region by 2019 so that food materials can be delivered in a refrigerated or frozen state from producers to military units, thereby enhancing the safety and hygiene management of meals.

**| Military Barracks Modernization |** The MND refurbishes the military barracks to ensure a convenient living environment for the young service members.

<sup>2</sup> Net food material cost, including the cost for main meals, snacks and dessert.

The project for military barracks modernization is carried out in phases based on the Unit Integration and Relocation Plan. During Phase 1 (2003-2009), old and confined barracks in the forward and remote areas constructed prior to 1982 were improved first. During Phase 2 (2010-2012), barracks constructed after 1983 were renovated and expanded. Phase 3 (2013-) of the project is improving additional barracks according to the Defense Reform Basic Plan (2014-2030).

With the project for military barracks modernization, the living area per person has been expanded from 2.3 m<sup>2</sup> in platoon-sized, floor-type rooms to 6.3 m<sup>2</sup> in squad-sized, bed-type rooms. In addition, convenience facilities such as cyber knowledge information facilities, fitness centers, and lounges have been established and female-only facilities were added and are in operation as well.

**Chart 8-5. Progress on the Project for Military Barracks Modernization**

Category	Total Demand	Completed (-2013)				2014-	
		Sum	Funded	BTL	Others	Funded	BTL
Army barracks (battalions)	702	678	378	200	100	-	24
Navy and Air Force barracks (buildings)	933	898	683	143	72	35	-
GOPs, coastline and riverside posts (buildings)	1,081	970	970	-	-	111	-
Total	2,716	2,546	2,031	343	172	146	24

### 3. Expansion of Welfare Infrastructure for Service Members

The MND makes efforts to expand and improve military welfare facilities by considering the characteristics of military service which involve long standby duty and the fact that most of the units are located on islands and in mountainous areas.

The MND established the MND Welfare Agency by integrating the welfare agencies of the Army, Navy and Air Force in 2010, and allows service members to enjoy more benefits by enhancing the efficiency of welfare management and improving the conditions of each welfare facility. In March 2014, the MND completed the construction of the MND Convention Center within the MND complex and is expected to build additional welfare facilities and residence buildings such as the MND culture and research center, military apartments, and dormitories for service members' children in Wirye New Town by 2016, thereby greatly improving the conditions of leisure, welfare and residence for service members.

The MND implements a renovation project for outdated welfare centers and military

supermarkets. As for the units that are planned to be shut down or relocated, and therefore the project for military barracks modernization is not applied, the MND has built military community centers. The military community centers have various convenience facilities such as libraries, cyber knowledge information facilities, singing rooms, snack bars, and barber shops where service members can spend their free time in a healthy and sound way.



Soldiers participating in the reading program

The MND has supplied exercise equipment to the fitness centers to improve the service members' conditions for physical training. By establishing an exercise equipment supply plan according to the size of units, the MND provided exercise equipment to 694 units in 2012 and 1,512 units in 2013. In addition, the MND established 311 futsal fields for units on islands and in forward and remote areas between 2013 and 2014.

To enhance the fairness of welfare benefits, the MND plans to build additional welfare facilities with a focus on areas that are falling behind in terms of welfare condition. In forward areas, the MND plans to establish welfare facilities for soldiers only and reestablish the Korean Army hotel in Seoul by 2017 to provide accommodations for soldiers during off-post visits. It also plans to improve welfare for service members and their families living in remote island areas by constructing an integrated welfare center on Baengnyeongdo Island.

In the future, the MND will continue to improve the welfare infrastructure for service members by listening to the voices of service members and conducting satisfaction surveys on a regular basis.

#### 4. Expansion of Military Family Support Policies

**| Expansion of Military Child Care Facilities |** In order to improve the poor child care conditions for the children of service members, the MND has secured child care facilities by phases in conjunction with the military residence construction plan. The MND has been operating 64 military child care centers as of September 2014 and plans to raise the number to 180 or more by 2020. The criteria for building child care centers in forward areas was revised from units with 100 or more military households to those with 15 or more children who require daycare.

In areas where the installation of child care centers is limited, the MND establishes

“cooperative child care spaces” in military residences in coordination with the Ministry of Gender Equality and Family. In these cooperative child care spaces parents can share information on child care, while children can play with others in a safe and comfortable environment. The MND opened the first cooperative child care space in Cheolwon, Gangwon-do in December 2013, and plans to increase the number to 15 by 2016.

**| Expansion of the Military Residence Support Project |** Stable residence support is the most important element of family welfare for service members who frequently move and work in remote areas.

The MND supports military residences for service members by establishing the legal grounds for residence support in the Framework Act on Military Welfare, and continues to improve outdated, small residences. For those who cannot move into military housings, the MND provides lease loans for private residences, and from 2015, it matches the standard amount of loans to the realistic level of the market price for a lease by region.



Military child care center

The MND also implements various policies to increase the number of career service members that own houses. Therefore, the MND amended the Framework Act on Military Welfare and the Rules on Housing Supply in order to provide service members who are non-homeowners and have been in the military for at least 10 years with opportunities to have priority and preference in special housing. With such amendments, the MND has supplied about 3,760 houses from 2007 to September 2014 and plans to provide 1,400 more in the public housing site in Wirye New Town located in the Greater Seoul Metropolitan Area (GSMA).

**| Establishment of Boarding Schools for Military Children |** Career service members have long faced the challenge of providing quality education for their children, as they frequently relocate and often work in small and remote areas.

To provide stable education for military children, the MND established Hanmin High School, a boarding school, in March 2014. Since the children studying in this school can focus on their studies without worrying about being transferred, their parents can better concentrate on their military duties. This is expected to greatly contribute to enhancing the morale of career service members and recruiting talented human resources. As the school can accommodate only 5% of military children who are about to enter high school, it is

necessary to establish additional schools. The MND plans to establish more boarding schools for military children in the future.

# Section 3 Development of the Defense Medical System

---

The MND develops the medical system by improving disease prevention and early diagnosis, enhancing the professionalism and specialization of military hospitals, and establishing a foundation for personalized medical service based on the Development Plan of the Armed Forces Medical System (2013-2017). The ROK military will enhance the health of service members and their combat capabilities by developing a defense medical system that is trusted by the service members and the people.

---

## 1. Disease Prevention and Early Diagnosis

**| Tailored Control of Infectious Diseases |** The MND has established a control management system for infectious diseases by considering the outbreak cycles of major infectious diseases, and continues to expand the types and coverage of vaccines for service members.

Previously, Hepatitis A vaccination was only administered to the trainees in some recruit training battalions in forward areas; however, the vaccination is now administered to all Army service members working in Gangwon-do and Gyeonggi-do. Also, the vaccination for pertussis is administered when vaccinations for tetanus and diphtheria are given. Considering that immunity is usually developed 15 days after vaccination, the MND will look into options to maximize the effects of vaccination by administering them early for service members before they join the military.

**| Health Counseling for New Recruits and Modification of Medical Checkups for Corporals |** The ROK military continues to execute a system in which new recruits go



24 hours in a field hospital

through a one-on-one health counseling session with a battalion-level surgeon. Also, in 2012, the ROK military test-operated a system in which corporals receive medical checkups equivalent to that provided by the National Health Service to identify and treat diseases at an early stage. As this system started to be implemented in full swing since 2013, more examination surgeons were put in place. If anything suspicious is detected from the checkups, it is double-checked by a surgeon, and the patients are hospitalized if needed.

## 2. Enhancement of Professionalism and Specialization

**| Specialization and Professionalization of Military Hospitals and Establishing the Armed Forces Trauma Center |** The MND adjusts the roles and functions of military hospitals and carries forward specialization in military hospitals based on the principle of selection and concentration.

The MND reviews the option of separately operating hospitals that treat rapidly deteriorating diseases from those that receive patients who require long-term hospitalization after surgery. It plans to operate the military hospitals after subdividing them by function to respond effectively to multiple diseases that could occur simultaneously due to the characteristics of the work environment.



Aerial view of the Armed Forces Trauma Center

In advanced countries such as the United States, military hospitals install and operate trauma centers that conduct critical functions in the field of trauma treatment. The ROK military also plans to open the Armed Forces Trauma Center in 2017 to make a breakthrough improvement in treating those who suffer from major trauma.

**| Strengthening Capabilities for Military Medical Research |** The Armed Forces Medical Research Institute carries out various military medical studies related to the prevention of infectious diseases, response to biological warfare, securing of contract-based research personnel, etc. In particular, it makes efforts to mitigate anxiety over the spread of infectious diseases by acquiring the capabilities to examine and diagnose these diseases, such as influenza and norovirus, which mainly break out in communal living. In addition, the Institute will heighten the status of the military's medical research by seeking cooperative relationships and mutual agreements with relevant inter-agencies in the field of military medical research.

### 3. Establishing a Foundation for Tailored Medical Service

#### | Building Emergency Medical Evacuation System Considering the Transportation

**Condition** | The Emergency Patient Support Center of the Armed Forces Medical Command, established in 2012, quickly evaluates the condition of patients and offers information on the military hospitals and evacuation assets that are suitable to the patient's condition. In the past, only the limited evacuation assets available for use attached to the patient's unit were used for evacuation. However, an improvement was made to widen the range of evacuation assets to include military and government helicopters and various other assets.

Currently, the ROK military is evacuating patients using utility helicopters that are equipped only with first aid equipment; however, it will introduce helicopters solely dedicated to the purpose of medical evacuation by 2019 to provide treatment for emergency patients during evacuation.

#### | Vitalizing Civil-Government-Military Cooperation on Medical Treatment

| The MND concluded agreements with the Ministry of Public Safety and Security and the Korean Red Cross to cooperate in the field of emergency patient evacuation and emergency treatment education. The military hospitals and division-level medical units of the Army, Navy and Air Force are also effectively responding to emergency patients based on medical treatment agreements concluded with civilian hospitals located in their closest proximity. In particular, the Marine Corps HQ concluded an agreement with the city of Incheon to provide medical support for local residents of Baengnyeongdo Island such as treatments for ear, nose, throat and eyes, and CT scanning. The MND will continue to improve the medical support condition for service members by expanding medical service agreements with local civilian hospitals.

# Section 4 Expansion of Support for Retiring Service Members

Providing national support for retiring service members to transition into the civilian workforce in a stable manner has a significant impact on the morale of active-duty service members, as well as strengthens the overall national defense capabilities. The MND strengthens its job searching support for retiring service members for their smooth transition into society. In addition, it operates a military pension system to ensure stability for career service members who have retired after devoting themselves to the nation.

## 1. Enhancing Outplacement Support Education and Expanding Job Opportunities

**| Direction of the Outplacement Support Policy |** The best welfare for retiring service members is ensuring their reemployment. Providing national support for retiring service members to transition into the civilian workforce in a stable manner has a significant impact on the morale of active-duty service members, as well as strengthens national defense capabilities, with opportunities to recruit talented people.

The outplacement support departments of the MND, Army, Navy and Air Force support military officers who have served longer than the mandatory service period to enable them to see new career opportunities by setting a career support direction according to their service duration. They make all-out efforts to provide job opportunities to anyone who desires to be reemployed after retirement from military service by offering basic outplacement education, individual competency training for employment, and job information. They also help retiring service members find job opportunities as well as secure and develop job positions for them.



Job fair for to-be-discharged service members hosted by the MND (April 2013)

**| Establishment of the MND Outplacement Training Institute |** The MND will open and operate the MND Outplacement Training Institute in 2015 to offer systematic outplacement support education to retiring military officers.

A considerable number of retired service members find it difficult to adjust to society because they retire when the level of their living expenditures is the highest after a long period of service under special conditions. The MND Outplacement Training Institute plans to provide one-stop support for service members that ranges from career counseling to outplacement education and job searching assistance. Outplacement support education



Aerial view of the MND Outplacement Training Institute  
(construction underway in Wirye New Town)

used to be conducted mainly for long-term service members, but will be expanded to short- and medium-term service members after the Institute is established. Once expanded, the annual number of service members eligible for education will be increased from 4,000 to 16,000.

The MND will provide short-term service members with short-term employment assistance education, and provide mid-term service members with professional education that is necessary for them to acquire jobs for a livelihood. The MND will provide long-term service members with customized education that allows them to find jobs related to making contributions to society. It will also conduct research on military expertise associated with various jobs in society such as national defense licenses.

**| Securing Job Positions for Retiring Service Members |** The MND has expanded the outplacement support education period from the original 5-12 months to 10-12 months to guarantee the minimum time required for the reemployment of retired service members. From 2014, it began to provide mid-term service members with a competency training allowance that was previously given mainly to long-term service members.

The MND operates a veterans support council composed of related organizations with an objective to secure 50,000 job positions for retired service members by 2017.

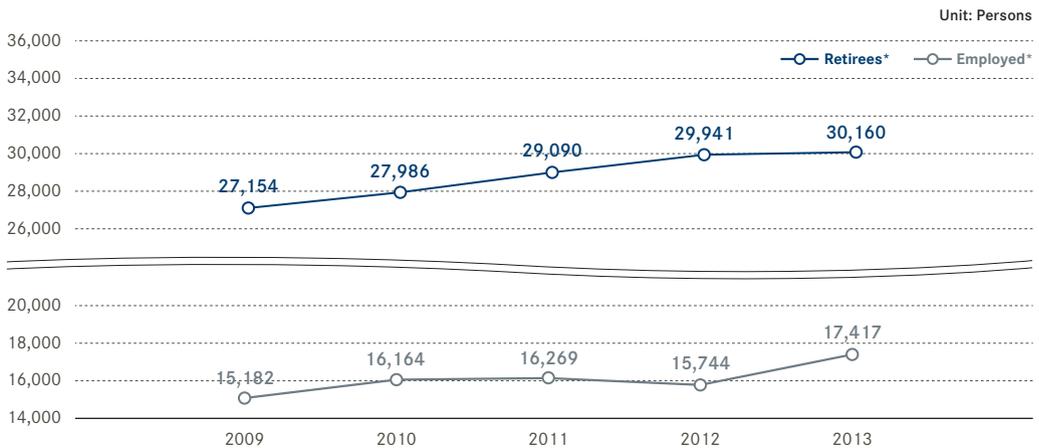
Through these efforts, the MND has secured 28,785 job positions that could make use of the military experience of retired service members as of the end of September 2014.

**Chart 8-6. Status of Secured Job Positions for Military Personnel Who Served More Than Five Years**



The MND also provides job searching support for retired service members who served for a mid-term period or longer. Their employment status for the last five years is as shown in Chart 8-7.

**Chart 8-7. Employment Status for the Last Five Years**



\* Retirees: Those discharged for the last five years from the relevant year

\* Employed: Those employed as of the end of the relevant year

## 2. Introduction of the Military Service Compensation Point System

The MND is proceeding with the introduction of a military service compensation point system to instill pride in the hearts of the retired service members who have faithfully served

their duties, and compensate for opportunity costs due to the mandatory military service.

The military service compensation point system was developed to provide those who faithfully completed their services with extra points when they search for jobs. The system was first introduced in 1961; however, it was abolished by the ROK Constitutional Court in December 1999, as they decided that the system was unconstitutional. Unfortunately, the abolition of the point system caused many problems including the demoralization of service members conducting mandatory service and the weakening of justification for the mandatory military service.

The MND is pushing to reintroduce the military service compensation point system to find ways to support those who have completed their military services and inspire pride in their fulfillment of military duties. The National Assembly is also reviewing the “Revision of the Military Service Act” which was proposed as legislation sponsored by lawmakers. The contents of the legislation reflect the intent of the judgment of unconstitutionality in 1999, and include providing a certain level of extra points to individuals applying for public positions, limiting the ratio of recipients of the points being accepted to the total accepted, and restricting the period or number of times for receiving benefits of extra points. The MND is working to find the middle ground on this matter by carefully listening to the various opinions related to the system.

### **3. Operating Military Pension System that Reflects the Uniqueness of Military Service**

A military pension system was introduced to contribute to the stable living conditions and improved welfare of career service members by providing them and their families with monetary compensation once they retire after their faithful service period. The pension system also provides the service members or their families with monetary compensation if the service member retires or passes away due to physical or mental problems, or receives medical treatment due to diseases or injuries acquired while on duty.

**| Characteristics of the Military Pension System |** Service members work under harsh conditions while risking their lives, and they usually retire between the ages of 45 and 56, when the level of their living expenditures is the highest. As such, the military pension system is intended to provide social insurance and livelihood security as well as national compensation for their services.

The military pension plays a crucial role in allowing service members to focus on their duties while enduring harsh work conditions without worrying about their lives after

retirement. In particular, the military pension can also be seen as a national security expense necessary to acquire a capable workforce in the military. Advanced countries also provide more preferential benefits to the military pension compared to the other public pension programs in consideration of such characteristics of the military pension.

**| Efforts towards Financial Stabilization |** Because the military pension was first paid out in 1961, which was during the early stage of its introduction, the military pension system did not have the opportunity to accumulate enough funding. Therefore, most of the pension payments have been appropriated by the national budget.

The MND has continuously improved the pension system to stabilize funding. Through the Military Pension Act revised in 2013, it has raised the amount of contributions and shares borne by service members as well as the government, and contributed to the stabilization of pension funding by demanding service members with more than 33 years of service to pay contributions. At the same time, however, the MND decided to maintain the timing and the amount of pensions to be paid out at the current level, considering the unique characteristics of military service.

**| Enhancing the Efficiency of the Pension Payment System |** The MND makes efforts to improve recipient satisfaction and administrative efficiency by making precise payments and closely collaborating with the relevant administrative agencies. In July 2013, to better protect the livelihood for pension recipients, the MND decided to allow them to receive their pension payment in cash, which is usually remitted to savings accounts only, in case their savings accounts are seized. From May 2014, the MND started to issue a card-type pension certificate equipped with a bank transaction function in order to enhance the dignity and satisfaction of pension recipients.

# Chapter 9

## Defense Policies Focusing on Respect for the People



Section 1 Improvement of Defense Regulations and the Public's Rights and Benefits	216
Section 2 Enhancement of Benefits for War Veterans and Service Members Killed in Action	223
Section 3 Development of the Public Disaster and Safety Support System	227
Section 4 Improvement of the Military Service System and Military Administration	232
Section 5 Strengthening Communications with the Public	237



Children from the Dongsim Child Care Center at the 11th Ground Forces' Festival (October 2013)

# Section 1 Improvement of Defense Regulations and the Public's Rights and Benefits

---

The ROK military makes efforts to improve defense regulations and promote people's rights and benefits to the extent that military operations are not affected with the goal of coexistence between the public and the military. First of all, it modifies defense regulations to resolve people's inconveniences and protect their property rights, and improves abnormal practices and systems which have accumulated for a long time in the field of national defense. As the areas surrounding military installations become urbanized, the ROK military adjusts military installation protection zones and improves related systems in a reasonable manner. It also comes up with measures related to military airbase relocation and noise prevention in consideration of public demands and consistently makes efforts to operate the military in an environmentally friendly manner.

---

## 1. Improvement of Regulations and Normalization of Abnormal Practices

**| Improving Regulations Pertaining to National Defense |** The basic direction of the MND's regulatory reform is to resolve people's inconveniences and protect their property rights to the extent that military operations are not adversely affected. The MND actively implements its regulatory reform in consideration of the uniqueness of the ROK's security conditions. In 2013, the MND contributed to enhancing people's convenience and invigorating the economy by making improvements in various areas such as adjusting military installation protection zones and improving the related systems, enhancing the military supply system of the MND Welfare Agency, and expanding the commercialization of military supplies. In 2014, the MND also made efforts to adjust military installation protection zones and improve the related systems, adjust various requirements for employment, and upgrade systems to invigorate defense exports by selecting them as major tasks.

To prevent unnecessary regulations from being added in the defense area, the MND utilizes an internal regulatory reform committee to review the appropriateness of the regulation when there is a need to add or reinforce regulations pertaining to laws. In 2014, by organizing a defense regulatory reform task force, the MND established the Regulatory Reform Implementation Plan and identified major tasks. It continues to monitor the implementation progress on a regular basis. As part of the reforms, the MND convened an open forum in which the public participated and made an overall review of regulations

pertaining to defense legislation.

In 2014, the MND identified contents regarding regulations by reviewing not only the relevant laws but also the internal rules of the ministry as well as the Army, Navy and Air Force, and is continuing to modify the regulations that need improvement.

In September 2013, a contest inviting ideas and proposals from the public was held for the first time by the MND in order to effectively resolve people's inconveniences. It also operates a bulletin board on the MND's website to collect various ideas and opinions from the public.

The MND will continue to make efforts in a variety of ways so that the people can personally feel the effects of regulatory reform.

**| Normalization of Abnormal Practices |** The MND strives to realize a clean and transparent defense by reforming abnormal practices and systems that have accumulated in the defense area according to the government's policy to implement "normalization of abnormal practices."

The MND makes efforts to handle fatal accidents in a fair and transparent manner by selecting "improving reliability in the handling of fatal accidents in the military" as one of the major tasks for the normalization of abnormal practices. In May 2014, the MND strengthened the privileges of those who died during military service by granting funeral and ceremonial procedures equivalent to those who died in the line of duty.

In September 2014, the MND established the "Central Distinguished Service Mortality Evaluation Committee" with the majority of the committee members being selected from the outside by amending the Instructions for Distinguished Service Casualty Process. Thus, by allowing the committee to review the first trial decisions of the Army, Navy and Air Force, the MND resolved the controversy over impartiality and unified the standards that are used to determine the retrials.

As the number of bodies and remains left untaken by families for a long time are increasing, problems pertaining to the treatment of the deceased have started to occur. Against this backdrop, the MND has established a task force to encourage the bereaved families to take the bodies and remains.

For those who died during military service, the MND actively promotes a plan to expand the scope of subjects to be buried at the national cemetery if the government fails to prove that the death has nothing to do with military duty.

By selecting "improving the unauthorized use of private and public land and utilizing idle land in military installations" as a normalization task, the MND will take the necessary measures to solve problems such as buying, setting up surface rights on, or leasing required land while returning unnecessary land. It will also systematically classify the idle land in military installations and sell them or transfer them to the Ministry of Strategy and Finance,

or utilize them in phases.

The MND implements the task of “eradicating defense supplies corruption,” which has long been raised in the area of defense capability improvement, as part of the efforts to normalize abnormal practices. In February 2014, the MND built a cooperative network with certified test agencies to block forgery and falsification of test records and establish measures to prevent their recurrence. It also promotes the legislation of the Fair Cost Price Act, which includes the compulsory submission of cost price data, investigation of cost price data, and redemption of illicit gains, while reforming the cost price management system, including expanding outsourcing and the cost price information system.

Regarding negotiated contracts with veterans’ affairs and welfare organizations, the MND stimulates competition among organizations by checking their faithfulness in implementing contracts. For weapons system purchase projects, the MND strengthens transparency in selecting contractors by newly adding credit ratings to the evaluation list. It also enhances regular checkups and prevention systems by expanding internal inspections and ombudsman activities.

In the military administration area, the MND has adjusted the mandatory service age standard for those with obligations to support, those with the ability for self-support, and those who are dependents to a realistic level by strengthening the standard for reduction of or exemption from military service due to difficulties in making a living, and the standard for exemption from physical checkups for conscription for the disabled. Also, individuals who were exempt from military service as a disabled person without receiving a military service physical checkup will now have to fulfill their military service if their disability condition improves.

To resolve the problem of artistic personnel being concentrated in certain areas, the MND has reformed the enrollment standard for artistic personnel and mandated that artistic and sports personnel donate their talent to culturally underprivileged communities. In addition, the MND strives to promote equity and fairness in the fulfillment of military service by establishing grounds to manage the fulfillment of military service by entertainers and athletes who draw public attention. It has developed a system to prevent and crack down on military service exemption cases due to intentional physical damage and deception, and strengthens public relations activities in order to establish a sound barracks culture.

In order to implement the normalization of abnormal practices, the MND has internally set three areas for improvement: “breaking down outmoded conventions and improving culture,” “reforming customs” and “improving systems” and has carried out tasks such as “managing the talent pool based on capabilities,” “strengthening personal information protection,” “establishing a horizontal contract culture,” and “improving the management procedure for donated funds and gifts.”

The MND will continue to identify normalization tasks through internal proposals, public idea contests, etc. in order to fundamentally correct inappropriate practices and systems in the defense area, which in turn contributes to building a strong military focused on combat missions.

## 2. Streamlining Regulations Related to Military Installation Protection Zones

**| Reasonable Management of Military Installation Protection Zones |** As the military operational environment is changing, the MND adjusted the Civilian Control Line from 15 km to 10 km from the Military Demarcation Line (MDL) in 2008 to guarantee the property rights of the people. Since then, a total of 356.57 million m<sup>2</sup> of land has been removed from the list of military installation protection zones, while a total of 302.57 million m<sup>2</sup> of controlled protection zones<sup>1</sup> have been downgraded to restricted protection zones<sup>2</sup> from 2008 to 2014.

**Chart 9-1. Status of Military Installation Protection Zones that Have Been Removed or Relaxed**

As of December 2014, Unit: Million m<sup>2</sup>

Category	Total	-2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014
Removed	356.57	212.90	12.81	25.22	49.54	1.59	27.79	26.72
Relaxed	302.57	240.47	0.19	2.67	5.70	6.25	0.76	46.53
Total	659.14	453.37	13.00	27.89	55.24	7.84	28.55	73.25

The MND has entrusted local governments to handle the administrative process with regard to the expansion of housing or construction of structures, etc. for some areas of military installation protection zones in order to promote the administrative convenience of the people while expanding the scope of areas to be entrusted. The status of land entrusted to local governments is shown in Chart 9-2.

**Chart 9-2. Status of Land Entrusted to Local Governments**

As of December 2014, Unit: Million m<sup>2</sup>

Category	Total	-2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014
Area	1,109.33	493.13	150.20	230.06	55.24	40.56	93.49	46.65

1 Protection zones adjacent to the MDL that require a high level of security for military operations, and protection zones that require the functions of important military bases and installations to be preserved.

2 Protection zones necessary for the smooth execution of military operations, and protection zones that require the protection of military bases and installations or the safety of the local residents.

The MND will continue to reduce and adjust the military installation protection zones to the extent that military operations are not affected so as to contribute to protecting the people's property rights and the development of local communities.

**| Improving Systems Pertaining to Military Installation Protection Zones |** The MND is continuously amending the laws pertaining to the utilization of land by the people along with the removal and relaxing of military installation protection zones. The MND shortened the period of consultation from 30 to 15 days in the case of construction of buildings that do not exceed the height restriction within flight safety zones by revising the Directive on the Management of Military Bases and Military Installation Protection Zones in 2013. The MND also introduced a preliminary counseling system that provides information on necessary documents, procedures, and acceptable height prior to consultation. It will continue to seek improvements in the systems such as disclosing the height restriction information within the flight safety zones on the Internet in order to prevent buildings exceeding the height limit from being designed.

**| Resolving Problems Pertaining to Regulations through Civil, Government and Military Cooperation |** The MND held meetings with the local governments of Gyeonggi-do, Gangwon-do, etc. in April and May 2014 to streamline regulations pertaining to military installations that are substantially affecting local residents. Through these meetings, the MND has identified 70 tasks to carry out, including the expansion of housing in military installation protection zones. To implement these tasks with a focus on actual work sites, the MND operates a working-level consultative group for regulatory improvement among the MND, local governments and military units. It will substantially resolve issues related to regulations by collecting the opinions of local residents through a thorough site investigation.

**| Adjusting the Ammunition Safety Distance and Relocating Ammunition Facilities |** In the areas near ammunition facilities, the MND sets a minimum safety distance to protect the lives and properties of local residents living nearby. It is inevitable that personal property rights such as building extensions to existing buildings are partially limited to some extent within the safety distance. Local residents are consistently demanding that the military relocate ammunition facilities or reduce the safety distance. Accordingly, the MND carries out a study on safety standards for ammunition and explosive materials in cooperation with the Agency for Defense Development to protect the people's property rights and utilize land efficiently. Accordingly, in order to adjust the ammunition safety distance, the MND actively strives to guarantee the people's property rights by building underground ammunition storage

facilities and optimizing the amount of ammunition to be stored.

### 3. Relocation of Military Airbases and Noise Prevention Measures

The Special Act on Military Airbase Relocation and Support was enacted in 2013 to resolve public complaints about noise from military airbases and infringement of people's property rights due to limitations on development.

To enforce the Special Act, the MND established the Military Airbase Relocation Bureau in 2014. The bureau reviews proposals on military airbase relocation suggested by local governments by considering the efficiency of operation execution, degree of damage caused by noise, funding method, etc.<sup>3</sup> The MND operates an advisory group and evaluation committee consisting of experts from different fields under the leadership of the head of the Military Airbase Relocation Bureau to evaluate the suggested proposals in an objective and fair manner.

The MND operates a consultative group for conflict management which consists of representatives from the MND, military, local governments, and local residents in order to handle conflicts that occur during the implementation of relocation projects. The consultative group will play a role in preventing potential conflicts between the military and locals to facilitate the implementation of projects.

The MND pursues the enactment of the Military Airbase Noise Prevention and Affected Areas Assistance Act to resolve noise issues in areas near airbases and shooting ranges. The proposed act stipulates the establishment of a noise prevention committee, measurements of noise levels, and support policies for the areas affected by noise after being designated and proclaimed as an affected area.

Besides the act's enactment, the MND will continue to make efforts to reduce noise from military airbases and shooting ranges by installing noise prevention facilities, improving flight procedures, altering flight routes, restricting night flights and shooting training, and avoiding highly populated areas when making flights.

---

<sup>3</sup> Military airbase relocation procedure: Suggestion of relocation (the head of the local government that is currently housing the military airbase) → Review of the relocation suggestion (by the Defense Minister) → Selection of potential relocation sites → Deliberation on selection of potential relocation sites (by the relocation site selection committee) → Establishment and deliberation on support plan for areas close to the relocation site (by the relocation project support committee) → Announcement of relocation site selection → Resident vote and application to bid (the head of the local government of the potential relocation site) → Deliberation on selection of relocation site → Implementation of relocation and support works.

## 4. Eco-Friendly Military Management

**| Expanding and Improving the Military's Basic Environmental Facilities |** The ROK military operates basic environmental facilities to prevent environmental contamination generated by the military from damaging neighboring areas. It strengthens cooperation with local governments so that domestic sewage can be treated in the local governments' public sewage treatment facilities.

The MND has installed bank dikes that block off oil leakage from oil storage facilities as well as auto oil leakage detection systems to manage the soil environment. It also regularly conducts tests on the level of contamination around the areas adjacent to the facilities. The MND carries out soil environment assessments prior to the relocation and shutdown of military units and takes necessary measures according to the assessment results.

**| Environmental Purification Activities for Returned USFK Bases |** The MND carries out thorough environmental inspections of returned USFK bases to identify possible soil pollution. If soil pollution is detected, it deals with the case according to domestic environmental laws. A total of 51 USFK bases have been returned as of September 2014. For 17 returned bases that exceeded the domestic environmental pollution limit, the MND completed pollution purification projects and eased concerns over soil pollution in the returned USFK bases by disclosing the purification process to local residents, civic groups and the media and giving on-site explanations. The MND will implement pollution purification projects for the USFK bases that are scheduled to be returned after the construction of a USFK base in Pyeongtaek is completed if their pollution levels exceed the domestic environmental pollution standard.

**| Improving Working Conditions for Service Members and Establishing Measures to Reduce Harmful Substances |** The MND improves the environment of the facilities where service members live in order to prevent them from being exposed to harmful substances. A 2013 investigation result of radon (Rn) concentrations in military barracks showed that 498 out of 3,357 investigation points were over the acceptable level of 148 Bq/m<sup>3</sup>. The MND plans to improve those barracks that exceeded the standard by 2016. It is also investigating approximately 2,100 barracks which were not included in the previous investigation.

The MND also improves the environment to protect the health of indoor shooting range operators. It plans to complete an improvement project for 35 shooting ranges that exceeded 0.05 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, the lead concentration limit in the air, in the 2014 survey by 2015 and apply a new facility standard for newly established ranges starting from 2016.

# Section 2 Enhancement of Benefits for War Veterans and Service Members Killed in Action

The MND demonstrates the nation's strong will to carry out the responsibility for "taking care of those who have sacrificed themselves for the nation until the end" through patriots and veterans affairs projects, including the Korean War remains recovery project. For this, the MND enhances the benefits for war veterans and improves compensation systems to make sure that those who died or were disabled while conducting their official duties are properly rewarded.

## 1. Recovery of Korean War Remains

The MND founded the MND Agency for KIA Recovery and Identification (MAKRI) in January 2007 and operates it as a special agency for the recovery of war remains. Currently, there are approximately 200 personnel working in five divisions, which include planning, investigation, recovery, identification, and support, and eight recovery teams.

To accelerate the recovery of Korean War remains, the MND reinforced the investigation and identification staff by adding four professional exploration staff members and an identification staff member in 2013 and another investigation staff member in 2014 while adopting three types of identification equipment, including full-body X-ray scanners.



Recovery and collection of war remains



Promotional video for recovery of Korean War remains



Promotional video for the verification of participation in war

As a result of such efforts, the MND has recovered a total of 9,354 sets of remains as of September 2014 and has taken DNA samples from 28,502 bereaved family members. The personal identifications of 91 war KIAs have additionally been confirmed. To find more remains while war veterans and bereaved families are alive, the MND has established an intensive recovery system at the corps level based on the basic survey results of the locations of remains. The remains recovery project has been actively implemented through close cooperation between the corps and local governments.

Chart 9-3. Remains Recovery Status by Year

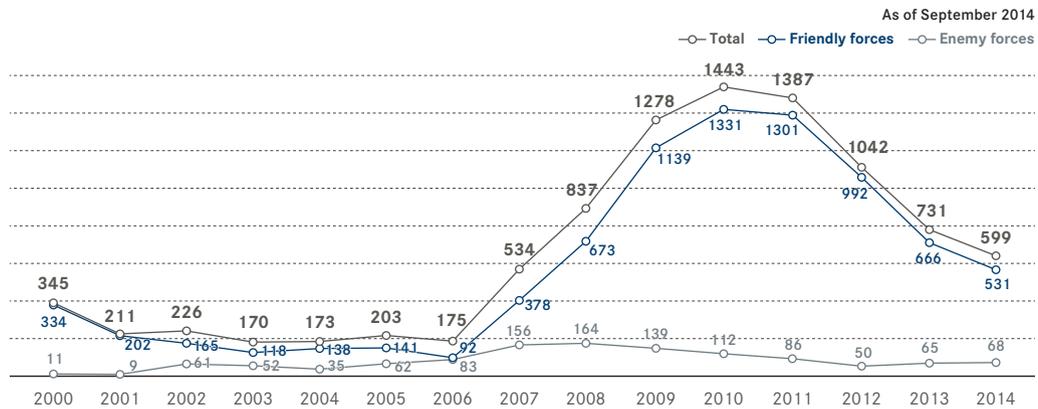


Chart 9-4. Status of DNA Sampling from Bereaved Family Members and Identification Confirmation of Korean War KIAs

As of September 2014, Unit: Persons, bodies

Category	Total	2000-2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014
DNA Sampling	28,502	1,923	1,455	2,282	4,524	3,388	4,252	4,765	4,005	1,908
Identification Confirmation	91	22	9	13	10	6	8	11	5	7

Since 2008, the MAKRI and the Joint POW/MIA Accounting Command (JPAC) have analyzed remains in detail by conducting joint identification activities twice a year. Through this effort, they established scientific grounds for calculation criteria for the number of remains and the target number for recovery. In particular, in 2014, MAKRI received international recognition for its professionalism by applying stable isotope analysis<sup>1</sup> in identifying the nationality of unidentified war remains.

<sup>1</sup> A technique to determine the geographic origin (Korea or North America) of remains by analyzing bone structures in the body (body bones, teeth) which are formed differently according to lifestyles and eating habits.

Despite its short 10-year history, the remains recovery project has shown rapid development, and its experience and techniques have reached a level that is globally recognized. Recently, the ROK military supported the recovery and identification of those missing during the Libyan Revolution upon the Libyan government's request.<sup>2</sup>

The MND will strive to implement the nation's unlimited responsibility by reinforcing professionals for the MAKRI and further developing remains recovery technologies.

## 2. Reinforcing Benefits and Uplifting Honor for War Veterans

The MND makes efforts to reinforce the privileges of Korean War veterans for their sacrifice and dedication while uplifting their honor.

The MND is registering non-military personnel who took part in the Korean War as meritorious individuals through the “deliberation committee for verification of participation in war.” The MND supports these individuals by providing various benefits such as an honorary allowance for participating in the war, a support fund from local governments, placement of meritorious individuals and their spouses in the national cemetery, reduced medical costs at veterans' hospitals, and special allocation of national housing.

The MND has implemented various activities such as improving facilities in the Seoul National Cemetery so that it is more public friendly, and invigorating training programs designed to promote patriotism.

In 2014, in celebration of the 60<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Korean War, the MND selected the “Incheon Landing Operations,” “Battle of the Nakdonggang River District” and “Battle of the Chuncheon District” as the three major victory commemoration ceremonies. At these victory commemoration ceremonies, equipment exhibitions, experience programs, battle reenactment events, etc. were provided to raise the spirit of victory for the public and uplift the sense of honor and pride for war veterans.

As described above, the MND will continue to raise the patriotism of the people and inherit the sacrifices and contributions that the war veterans have made by developing



Incheon Landing Operations victory commemoration ceremony (September 2014)

<sup>2</sup> A support team for the identification of missing persons in Libya, consisting of seven MAKRI personnel, was deployed to Libya (from July 2, 2012 to July 28, 2014).

policies to improve respectful treatment and honor for war veterans and holding various commemoration events.

### **3. Strengthening the Nation's Responsibility towards the Deceased and Disabled Service Members**

The MND improves its compensation systems to provide appropriate compensation for those who died or were disabled while executing their official duties.

Until recently, disability compensation was provided for those rated Grade 1 to Grade 7 with mental or physical disabilities. However, the scope of beneficiaries was expanded to Grade 9 by amending the Enforcement Decree of the Military Pension Act in 2013, which in turn improved the fairness of the compensation systems. With this, service members who retire from the military with Grade 8 to 9 mental or physical disabilities that were incurred during the execution of official duties are also entitled to receive compensation for their disabilities.

To strengthen compensation for self-inflicted deaths, in 2012, the MND has revised the Instructions for Distinguished Service Casualty Process so that self-inflicted deaths can also be recognized as those who died in the line of duty if the deaths were related to official duties. In addition, reexamination can be conducted if the cause of death is recommended to be death while on duty by other government agencies such as the Anti-Corruption & Civil Rights Commission and the National Human Rights Commission of Korea. From October 2014, the MND has established a reexamination committee which was previously operated in the Army, Navy and Air Force, and more than half of the members of the committee are composed of civilians such as experts on human rights, lawyers, and forensic science specialists. It also improves compensation systems for those who died in the military in line with society's elevated awareness of human rights such as easing the standard for acknowledging self-inflicted deaths as those who died in the line of duty by considering the Supreme Court's decision regarding the correlation between self-inflicted death and official duties.

The MND will continue to improve the related systems to strengthen the nation's responsibilities towards service members who sacrificed themselves for the country.

# Section 3 Development of the Public Disaster and Safety Support System

---

The ROK military, as the armed forces of the people, actively strives to protect the lives and property of the public in the case of national disasters. To this end, it refines its response manuals to ensure that disasters are managed in a systematic manner throughout the whole process of disaster prevention, preparation, response and restoration. Furthermore, the ROK military reinforces the disaster readiness posture by conducting exercises and education.

---

## 1. Establishment of the Public Disaster Support System

**| Civil-Government-Military Cooperation System to Prepare for Disasters |** The ROK military establishes a disaster support system for the people in cooperation with disaster management agencies such as the Ministry of Public Safety and Security (MPSS) and the Ministry of Land, Infrastructure and Transport (MOLIT), and local governments.

First, the ROK military refines the “crisis response action manual by disaster type” in cooperation with disaster management agencies. It develops crisis response capabilities by actively participating in the Safe Korea Exercise (SKX) held by the MPSS, applying the manual to actual exercises, and updating the manual based on the lessons learned.

Second, the ROK military maintains a crisis readiness posture to respond to possible disasters by operating more than 400 disaster status control centers in each unit of the Army, Navy and Air Force. When local governments or local fire stations request support from associated local military units, they take action in a timely and appropriate manner according to the discretion of the unit commanders. The MND controls and supervises the overall process of support.

Third, the ROK military strengthens disaster response training for personnel carrying out disaster-related duties. As the types of disasters are currently becoming more diversified and complex, a high level of professionalism in disaster response is required. Accordingly, the MND carries out professional training for personnel carrying out disaster-related duties in the Army, Navy and Air Force every April.

Fourth, the ROK military trains and manages military functional specialists who can be utilized when those working in major national infrastructures commit illegal acts to minimize any limitation in providing adequate public services to the people. The management status of the military functional specialists is shown in Chart 9-5.

**Chart 9-5. Management Status of the Military Functional Specialists**

As of September 2014

Category	Total	Railroad and Electric Motor Cars	Power Generation	Gas	Cargo Transportation
Persons	2,848	1,175	546	320	807

**| Emergency Rescue and Disaster Restoration Support |**

The MND is the emergency rescue and relief support agency designated by the Framework Act on the Management of Disasters and Safety, and it conducts emergency rescue and relief support missions when large-scale accidents involving human casualties occur.

For the last five years, the support provided by the ROK military towards the civilian sector for disaster damage restoration has amounted to approximately 340,000 troops and 7,400 pieces of equipment on a yearly basis. Key examples of disaster damage restoration support provided to the public are as follows.

When the Korean Railway Workers' Union (KRWU) held an illegal strike for 29 days from December 6, 2013 to January 3, 2014, which resulted in problems in the operation of electric rail cars in the Greater Seoul Metropolitan Area (GSMA), the MND immediately deployed military functional specialists as engine drivers and crews for the electric rail cars (approximately 9,000 man-days) and minimized the damage to the



Support for civilians related to avian influenza (January 2014)



Support for civilians related to flood damage (July 2013)



Snowfall damage restoration support in the eastern coast area (February 2014)

public.

In January 2014, avian influenza (AI) which originated in Gochang, Jeollabuk-do swept the entire country, causing much damage to farming households. The ROK military deployed approximately 59,000 troops and 200 pieces of equipment to actively support the slaughter of the infected livestock, operation of temporary control posts, quarantine activities, etc.



*Sewol* ferry incident rescue support (April 2014)

In February 2014, record snowfall left some of the residents of the eastern coast area isolated, causing serious damages. The ROK military urgently deployed a total of approximately 120,000 troops and 2,000 pieces of equipment and swiftly implemented snow removal operations while providing medical support for residents in isolated areas, making passageways and supplying daily necessities.

In April 2014, when the *Sewol* ferry incident occurred, the ROK military deployed troops, including the Ship Salvage Unit (SSU), and equipment, including vessels and aircraft, and actively supported after-accident activities in close cooperation with the related organizations.

The status of disaster damage restoration support provided for the last five years is shown in Chart 9-6.

The MND will make efforts to protect the lives and property of the people by deploying troops and equipment in a swift and active manner when a national-level disaster occurs.

**Chart 9-6. Status of National Disaster Damage Restoration Support**

Category	Support			Restoration Status				Key Activities
	Troops (1,000)	Equipment (No.)	Lives Saved (No.)	Households Cleaned up (No.)	Farmland (ha)	Roads and Embankments (km)	Greenhouses and Sheds (No.)	
2009	59	1,748	6	260	72	18	537	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• H1N1 influenza quarantine support</li> <li>• Water supply for drought areas</li> </ul>
2010	319	5,500	25	1,985	100	109	3,159	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heavy snowfall damage restoration</li> <li>• Foot-and-mouth disease and AI quarantine support</li> <li>• Typhoon (Kompasu) and torrential rainfall damage restoration</li> </ul>
2011	616	12,010	-	2,195	147	62	3,250	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heavy snowfall damage restoration</li> <li>• Foot-and-mouth disease and AI quarantine support</li> <li>• Typhoon (Muifa) and torrential rainfall damage restoration</li> </ul>

2012	219	6,660	-	3,425	31	43	2,623	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heavy snowfall damage restoration</li> <li>• Typhoon (Bolaven) and torrential rainfall damage restoration</li> <li>• KCTWU strike</li> </ul>
2013	67	581	-	265	85	74	84	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heavy snowfall damage restoration</li> <li>• Typhoon (Danas) and torrential rainfall damage restoration</li> <li>• KRWU strike</li> </ul>
September 2014	518	12,258	151	362	10	426	175	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AI quarantine support</li> <li>• Typhoon (Nakri) and torrential rainfall damage restoration</li> <li>• Rescue activities for the <i>Sewol</i> ferry incident</li> </ul>
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,798</b>	<b>38,757</b>	<b>182</b>	<b>8,492</b>	<b>445</b>	<b>732</b>	<b>9,828</b>	

## 2. Establishing Overseas Disaster Relief Support System and Strengthening Cooperation

Major disasters in several overseas countries recently have caused so much damage that one country alone cannot bear the burden, requiring the international community to provide humanitarian assistance collectively.

The ROK government plays a role as a member of the international community as seen by the enactment of the Overseas Emergency Relief Act in 2007 to provide emergency relief aid to foreign countries. The ROK military established the “military transport aircraft mission support system for overseas emergency relief” in May 2010 so that it can provide support within 48 hours if a disaster occurs in any of the 15 Asian countries. To this end, the ROK military has organized the Korea Disaster Relief Team (KDRT) and carries out response training and transport aircraft capacity verification exercises annually.

In July 2012, the ROK military verified its overseas transport capabilities and, in March 2013, it conducted response training in preparation for the third ASEAN Regional Forum Disaster Relief Exercise (ARF DiREx). In May 2013, in the third exercise co-hosted by the ROK and Thailand, the largest number of personnel ever participated, including approximately 1,800 personnel from 27 countries and around 240 disaster relief personnel from the ROK. The ROK Army’s specialized disaster relief unit and the Navy’s Ship Salvage Unit (SSU) have successfully executed search and rescue operations in cooperation with other participating countries, including the United States and Australia, which enhanced the ROK military’s disaster relief capabilities through humanitarian assistance.

In November 2013, when Typhoon Haiyan hit the Philippines, the ROK military swiftly transported the KDRT and supplies by using transport aircraft. It also airlifted disaster relief goods to the disaster-stricken areas in the Philippines and transported local people and

Korean residents in the Philippines to safe places, which immensely contributed to elevating the nation's status.

The status of overseas disaster relief support during the last 10 years is shown in Chart 9-7.

**Chart 9-7. Status of Overseas Disaster Relief Support**

Date	Country / Type of Disaster	Support in Detail
December 2004	South Asia / Tsunami	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One transport aircraft (C-130): 5.2 tons of relief supplies, including medicine</li> <li>• Two vessels (LST): 108 tons of relief supplies, including 16 excavators</li> </ul>
March 2006	The Philippines / Landslide on Leyte Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One transport aircraft (C-130)</li> <li>• 7.5 tons of relief supplies</li> </ul>
June 2006	Indonesia / Earthquake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One transport aircraft (C-130)</li> <li>• Seven tons of relief supplies, including clothing and food</li> </ul>
May 2008	China / Major Earthquake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Three transport aircraft (C-130)</li> <li>• 26 tons of relief supplies, including military tents</li> </ul>
November 2009	Cambodia / Typhoon	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One transport aircraft (C-130)</li> <li>• Seven tons of relief supplies, including daily necessities</li> </ul>
January 2010	Haiti / Earthquake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One rescuer from the Air Force (medical support)</li> </ul>
March 2010	Chile / Earthquake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 136 military tents</li> </ul>
March 2011	East Japan / Earthquake, Tsunami	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10 transport aircraft (C-130) (four times in total)</li> <li>* Transported 102 rescue personnel</li> <li>• 58.8 tons of relief supplies</li> </ul>
October 2011	Turkey / Earthquake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 100 military tents</li> </ul>
November 2013	The Philippines / Typhoon	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nine transport aircraft (C-130) (four times in total)</li> <li>* Transported 2,022 personnel, including a rescue team</li> <li>• 329 tons of relief supplies</li> </ul>

# Section 4 Improvement of the Military Service System and Military Administration

The MND improves the military service system and military administration to strengthen the military's combat capabilities and create an environment where military duty is fulfilled in a fair manner. To improve fairness and efficiency in carrying out military service duties, the MND develops military service systems such as a recruiting system and switchover service and alternative service systems. It also continuously refines its military administration procedures by carrying out various initiatives such as establishing measures to prevent the evasion of military duties and establishing a thorough checkup system for conscription.

## 1. Development of the Military Service System

**| Reducing the Military Service Period for Enlisted Service Members |** The MND implements the “reduction of the military service period for enlisted service members” as one of the national goals to alleviate the burden of military duties on the people. However, various prerequisites need to be satisfied such as improving security circumstances, establishing measures to prevent the proficiency degradation of enlisted service members, and acquiring the appropriate defense budget to increase the number of non-commissioned officers and improve incentives for officers and non-commissioned officers. The MND will review the issue of reducing the military service period for enlisted service members in the mid and long term by considering the fulfillment of these conditions.

**Chart 9-8. Changes in Military Service Period for Enlisted Service Members**

Unit: Months

Year	1953	1959	1962	1968	1977	1979	1984	1990	1993	1994	2003	2004	2008	2011
Army and Marine Corps	36	33	30	36	33	33	30	30	26	26	24	24	18	21
Navy	36	36	36	39	39	35	35	32	30	28	26	26	20	23
Air Force	36	36	36	39	39	35	35	35	30	30	28	27	21	24

**| Improving the Recruiting System |** The MND has implemented a “salaried volunteer

servicemen system” since January 2008 to prevent the weakening of the military’s combat capabilities due to a lack of skilled service members, which is a result of the reduced military service period for enlisted service members.

Salaried volunteer servicemen are classified into two categories, as shown in Chart 9-9. Combat and technically proficient soldiers (Type I) are selected from the regular troops with a high proficiency level, and they serve as staff sergeants for six to 18 months according to their wish after their mandatory service as a regular service member is completed. Advanced equipment operators (Type II) are selected from the civilian pool prior to enlistment, and these troops serve for three years from the day of enlistment. They serve as regular troops during their mandatory service period, but upon completion of this period, they serve the remainder of the three years as staff sergeants.

**Chart 9-9. Status of Salaried Volunteer Servicemen System by Type**

Category	Selected by	Service Period	Service Area	Payment*
Combat and technically proficient soldiers (Type I)	Army, Navy and Air Force	6-18 months	Combat and technically proficient positions	Approx. 1.35 million won per month
Advanced equipment operators (Type II)	Military Manpower Administration	3 years	Advanced equipment operating positions	Approx. 1.95 million won per month

\* Based on the third-class salary for staff sergeants in 2014

Due to the lack of applicants for the advanced equipment operator category, mainly caused by the relatively long service period, the MND expands the eligible application pool to active service members. It continues to make efforts to improve working conditions by gradually increasing the short-term staff sergeant promotion rate for salaried volunteer servicemen whose experience and qualities are sufficiently verified and pursuing the provision of overtime allowances.

From 2014, the MND has implemented the “tailored specialist system”<sup>1</sup> to expand opportunities to serve as technical specialists for military service candidates with educational backgrounds of a high school education or less who rarely serve as technical specialists. The tailored specialist system will be test-operated in the Army for two years from 2014 and expanded to the Navy and Air Force in the future.

1 This is a recruitment system especially for military service candidates with educational backgrounds of a high school education or less. In this system, selected service members can receive the technical training that fits their aptitude, fulfill their military duty as technical specialists and easily join society later, such as by getting a job.



Tailored specialist system promotional video

**| Improving the Switchover Service and Alternative Service Systems |** The switchover service<sup>2</sup> and alternative service<sup>3</sup> systems currently in force will be maintained at the current level until 2015. Starting from 2016, the MND will improve the systems by considering the future security environment and the military manpower supply prospect that takes into account the low birth rate and population ageing.

To set up the right concept for a social service system, the title of “public service personnel” was changed to “social service personnel” in 2013. The social service personnel are first deployed in social service areas such as social welfare, health and medical treatment rather than in administrative support areas. The MND continuously improves the system by deploying more field guidance personnel and strengthening counseling service to solve difficult situations for social service personnel and get them to focus better on the areas concerned.

Meanwhile, for skilled industrial personnel, the MND stably provides the tailored manpower required for work sites by deploying vocational high school and meister high school graduates. Technical research personnel are no longer assigned to large enterprises, but to small and medium-sized companies, which is contributing to the easing of manpower shortfalls in the industrial sector.

### **| Expanding Support of National Health Insurance from Government Funding |**

Questions on the equitable treatment of military service members have been raised since full-time reservists<sup>4</sup> and social service personnel have to pay their national health insurance premiums out of pocket despite the fact that they get paid the same amount as active service members and are also completing their military services.

To resolve the issue, the MND established legal grounds to support insurance premiums for full-time reservists and social service personnel through government funding in 2013, which came into effect in 2014, and enabled these service members who are not allowed to do economic activities to complete their duties stably.

---

2 This system allows military service members to serve as enlisted police, enlisted maritime police, or enlisted firefighters instead of active duty service members.

3 The purpose of this system is to efficiently utilize those excess military service members who are remaining after all active duty positions are filled to carry out activities for the public good equivalent to active duty service.

4 This refers to persons who enlist as active duty service members, complete basic military training and are assigned as reservists. They execute homeland defense duties and related support missions.

## 2. Improvement of Military Administration

**| Creating an Environment for Fair Military Service Fulfillment |** The MND has introduced the “military service records disclosure system for public officials with grade 4 or higher”<sup>5</sup> to satisfy the people’s right to know and enhance transparency and reliability in carrying out military service duties by revealing the military service records of public officials and their lineal descendants.

However, many people are still looking with distrust at the fulfillment of military service by those who attract much social attention such as high-ranking public officials and their lineal descendants, celebrities, and athletes. To resolve this, the MND is looking into introducing the “intensive military service records management system for military service candidates of public interest” as a national task.

The MND has implemented the “renowned military service family enhancement project” since 2004 to help those who diligently completed their military duties to take pride in it and be respected socially. Renowned military service families are selected from those families with three generations of active military service, and they benefit by getting discounts at museums, hospitals, condominiums, etc.

The MND implements a variety of policies to create a social climate in which those who have faithfully completed their military duties are respected, and to improve social awareness towards the fulfillment of mandatory military service.

**Chart 9-10. Status of Renowned Military Service Family Selection**

As of September 2014, Unit: Families

Total	-2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014
2,405	568	192	302	301	545	497

**| Strengthening Measures to Prevent Evasion of Military Service |** If it turns out that a person who was exempt from active military service or was given a reduced military service duty period due to disease or mental or physical disability used deceptive tricks to evade military service, the MND and Military Manpower Administration (MMA) can conduct a

5 Since the enactment of the Act on the Report and Disclosure of Military Service Records of Public Officials in 1999, those listed below and their lineal descendants are required to report and disclose their military service records.

- Public officials in political service (the President, members of the National Assembly, Ministers and Vice Ministers, etc.)
- Public officials in general service, etc. (grade 4 or higher)
- Active service members (colonel or higher)
- Public officials in education service
- Heads of local governments and members of local assemblies

verification physical checkup of the individual and change the decision. The MND also tightens enforcement against Internet sites that encourage the evasion of military service.

Starting from April 2012, MMA officials were mandated with special judicial police authority and investigated military service evasion cases, which resulted in a crackdown on 93 alleged military service evaders as of November 2014.

The MND plans to exert continuous efforts to boost fairness and transparency in carrying out military service by making institutional improvements to prevent the evasion of military service.

**| Improving the Conscription Checkup System |** The MND has continuously improved the checkup system for conscription in order to ensure fairness in military duty assignments and recruit elite personnel.

It has continuously augmented advanced medical equipment and professional medical personnel to enable precise physical psychological checkups, and will continue to secure more equipment and human resources for more precise checkups.

In addition, the MND plans to improve the rules for physical checkups in a reasonable manner to recruit elite personnel by strengthening the standard for active service eligibility pertaining to major diseases, including psychological disorders.

# Section 5 Strengthening Communications with the Public

---

The trust and support of the people are becoming more important than anything else in successfully implementing defense policies, as society becomes more transparent and open. The MND actively implements “National Defense 3.0” and strengthens communications with the public to realize defense policies that the people can experience and trust.

---

## 1. Implementing National Defense 3.0

The MND implements National Defense 3.0 by considering the unique characteristic of national defense while carrying out “Government 3.0,”<sup>1</sup> the ROK government’s foundation for the operation of state affairs. National Defense 3.0 refers to a new defense administration paradigm designed to realize robust security by managing organizations efficiently and proactively responding to changes based on the key values of “openness,” “communication,” “cooperation” and “integration.”

National Defense 3.0 places emphasis on innovation in the way of working, improvement of public information and data quality, tailored and integrated defense service for customer groups, and civilian-government-military cooperation. In the 2014 National Defense 3.0 Best Practice Competition, the top honor went to the “reasonable mitigation of regulations through local government-Ministry of National Defense-Joint Chiefs of Staff cooperation,” which sought reasonable ways to regulate by building cooperative systems among relevant personnel. Disclosure of military environment clean-up projects and related technologies to the civilian sector was also introduced as one of the best practices under Government 3.0 since the values created by information disclosure were recognized.

The MND has held various National Defense 3.0 events such as “Policy Briefing for

---

<sup>1</sup> A paradigm for government operation that provides tailored services to the people and support for the “Creative Economy” by disclosing public information and removing partitions among government agencies for cooperation.

Parents with Sons in the Military,” “Field Tours to Security Sites for Public Involvement Groups,” etc. in order to provide opportunities for the public to experience defense policies. The MND will strive to create outcomes that the public can experience by hosting National Defense 3.0 Day events, promoting the National Defense 3.0 Portal, and developing PR contents.

**Chart 9-11. Objectives and Strategies of National Defense 3.0 Implementation**



## 2. Strengthening Public Relations for the National Defense Policy

Even good policies cannot draw support from the people if such policies are neither known to nor understood by the people. The MND is staging various public relations (PR) activities to communicate and sympathize with the people in a close and friendly way. It has been actively utilizing imaging media and social media (social network services and Internet sites), which are currently leading the popular culture.

The MND delivers positive images of the military by using imaging media familiar to the people such as music videos and entertainment programs.

The MND social media, which was introduced in 2010, is also rapidly growing. In 2013, the MND added Kakao Story and Flickr to its social media list, which previously consisted

of Facebook, Twitter and YouTube. The MND social media conveys vivid images of the military, such as videos of military exercises, to the public and communicates with the younger generation on defense issues such as the benefits for service members and the military service system. The number of subscribers to the MND social media accounts has increased five-fold to 220,000 as of September 2014 compared to late 2012.

In addition, the MND has implemented various programs that people can participate in and provide various responses at the site where the program is being carried out. The MND helps children become familiar with and cultivate a positive image of the military from childhood by hosting the “Experience! The Sites of National Defense” event and operating military experience centers for children.



**Ministry of National Defense**  
Republic of Korea

22 Itaewon-ro (1 Youngsan-dong 3-ga), Youngsan-gu, Seoul, Republic of Korea

**Telephone:** 82-2-748-1111 **Help desk:** 82-2-748-6891 **Fax:** 82-2-748-6895

[www.mnd.go.kr](http://www.mnd.go.kr)

**Publication Registration Number** 11-1290000-000446-11